This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

Introduction to Latin Composition

William F. Allen

Ginn & Heath

Digitized by Google

Educ T 918.20.142

Harvard College Library

FROM

Edward H. Atherton

3 2044 097 055 735

E. H. Atherton,
Shrewsbury,
Mass.

May 1881.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

INTRODUCTION

TO

LATIN COMPOSITION

REVISED AND ENLARGED

WITH INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES ON ELEMENTARY CONSTRUCTIONS

BY

WILLIAM F. ALLEN

PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN

BOSTON

PUBLISHED BY GINN & HEATH

1880

Digitized by Google

M 7
M. Sc. 1112
Mar. 14, 1935
Edward H. Atherton

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1880, by
WILLIAM FRANCIS ALLEN,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

GINN & HEATH:
J. S. CUSHING, PRINTER, 75 MILK STREET,
BOSTON.

Digitized by Google

PREFACE TO FIRST EDITION.

THESE exercises are primarily designed as a training in Latin Syntax. It is taken for granted that the pupil has gone thoroughly through the Latin Lessons, or some other method of equal scope. No pains are taken, therefore, to illustrate the common rules of agreement and government. On the other hand, I have not aimed to introduce rare constructions and mere idiomatic expressions. It has seemed to me that the regular principles of prose construction should be the only object of attention at this stage of advancement; and that the rarer idioms will be acquired with little effort by those who follow out an extended course of Latin reading.

Nearly all the sentences in the written Exercises are taken, without change, from classic authors. These sentences are translated as literally as practicable; still, it has been impossible to avoid a considerable variety of expression, so that the Vocabulary will be found to contain quite a wide range of words and meanings, considering the whole number of sentences. I have thought it best not to provide special vocabularies for the several Lessons, nor many explanatory notes: it has been my desire to have the student acquire the habit of referring to grammar and vocabulary for general principles in the choice of words and constructions, rather than depend upon special directions in each case.

It is believed that these exercises can be taken up by any scholar who has gone thoroughly through any of the usual courses of Latin Lessons. Still, except in the case of mature or unusually capable pupils, I should advise that some time should first be devoted to mere translation. The familiarity with vocabulary and constructions thus acquired will be the best preparation for writing. I should let a class go through portions of Cæsar, and perhaps of other authors, as rapidly as is consistent with accuracy, and with very little parsing. Then I should take up parsing again, and introduce the writing of exercises. However, all such rules must vary with different classes and teachers.

UNIVERSITY OF WISCONSIN,
MADISON, WISCONSIN, June, 1870.

Digitized by Google

NOTE TO REVISED EDITION.

AFTER the present revised edition of this book was announced last summer, and when a part of it was already in type, it was decided to prefix to the original Lessons an introductory portion, to include the more elementary constructions of Latin syntax. This portion (Part I.), with the revision of the entire book consequent upon the change of plan, has been executed by my brother, Rev. J. H. ALLEN, of Cambridge, Mass.,* with the valuable co-operation of Mr. JOHN TETLOW, Master of the Girls' Latin School in Boston; aided by the skilful and acute criticism of Prof. Peck of Cornell University. Especial pains have been taken to facilitate the work of the earlier Lessons by a copious use of Oral Exercises (interlined); and very full references have been given throughout to the three Latin Grammars most in use. The experiment has also been tried of marking the *long vowels* in the Latin words employed, including those known to be long "by nature," and those understood to be lengthened in practice before the combinations *nf*, *ns*, and *gn*. Some changes of arrangement in Part II., with the condensation or transposition of several topics, have resulted from the change of plan above-mentioned; but these will not, in general, prevent the use of the two editions together where desired. Considerable additions have been made to the Vocabulary, which includes a few scores of familiar words not employed in the exercises, in order to facilitate such additional practice as teachers may find advisable.

W. F. A.

MADISON, WIS., June, 1880.

* Lecturer on Ecclesiastical History in Harvard University.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

I. — Elements of the Sentence.

Lesson		Page
1.	Subject and Predicate	1
2.	Object-Accusative	3
3.	Interrogative Forms	5
4.	Use of Relatives	7
5.	The Passive Voice	10
6.	Infinitive and Subject-Accusative	12
7.	Participles: Ablative Absolute	14

II. — Constructions of Cases.

1. — *Object-Cases.*

8.	Direct Object: Accusative	16
9.	Dative of Indirect Object	18
10.	Genitive and Ablative	19

2. — *With Adjectives.*

11.	Genitive with Adjectives	21
12.	Dative with Adjectives	22
13.	Ablative with Adjectives	23

3. — *Miscellaneous Uses.*

14.	Uses of the Accusative	25
15.	Dative: Idiomatic Uses	26
16.	Uses of the Ablative	28
17.	Time and Place	30
18.	Gerundive Constructions	31

III. — Moods and Tenses.

19.	Subjunctive: Independent Uses	33
20.	Sequence of Tenses	35
21.	Conditional Sentences	37
22.	Time-Clauses	39
23.	Purpose and Result	42

Digitized by Google

Educ T 918.20.142

Harvard College Library

FROM

Edward H. Atherton

3 2044 097 055 735

E. H. Atherton,
Shrewsbury,
Mass.

May 1881.

Digitized by Google

PART SECOND.

I. — Substantive Clauses.

(*Indirect Discourse.*)

Lesson		Page
24.	Accusative and Infinitive. — 1	44
25.	Accusative and Infinitive. — 2	46
26.	Accusative and Infinitive. — 3	48
27.	Special Constructions	49
28.	Indirect Questions	51
29.	Other Forms of Substantive Clause	53
30.	Impersonal Verbs	56

II. — Miscellaneous Constructions.

31.	Modifications of the Predicate	58
32.	Use of Tenses	60
33.	Wishes and Commands	62
34.	Use of Participles	63
35.	Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine	65
36.	Use of Conjunctions	68

III. — Case-Constructions.

37.	Apposition	69
38.	Uses of the Genitive	71
39.	Genitive after Verbs	73
40.	Dative with Verbs	74
41.	Dative with Passives	76
42.	Special Uses of the Dative	78
43.	Special Uses of the Accusative	80
44.	Special Uses of the Ablative	81
45.	Relations of Time	85
46.	Relations of Place	87

IV. — Adjectives and Pronouns.

47.	Adjectives: Special Uses	88
48.	Derivatives: Possessives	90
49.	Pronouns: Reflexive and Intensive	91
50.	Relative Pronouns	93
51.	Correlatives	94
52.	Indefinite Pronouns	96

Digitized by Google

V. — Subordinate Clauses.

Lesson		Page
53.	Simple Conditional Clauses	99
54.	Other Conditional Clauses	101
55.	Implied Conditions	103
56.	Comparative and Concessive Clauses	105
57.	Temporal Clauses	106
58.	Special Uses of *Cum*	108
59.	Causal Clauses	110
60.	Final Clauses	112
61.	Consecutive Clauses	114
62.	Clauses of Characteristic	117
63.	Infinitive Clauses	118
64.	Intermediate Clauses	120
65.	Dependent Conditional Clauses	122

VI. — Additional.

66.	The English Potential	125
67.	Further Uses of the Relative	130
68.	Supplementary Exercises	132
69.	Comparative Forms of Speech	135

VOCABULARY.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

PART FIRST.

I. — Elements of the Sentence.

Lesson I.

Subject and Predicate.

1. Learn the definitions of Subject and Predicate: §§ 172–174 (G. 192, except the first three paragraphs, 193. Rem., 194; H. 347. 1, 2; 351, 353, 367).

Note. — The references are to the sections of Allen & Greenough's Latin Grammar, revised edition. Parallel references are also given, in parenthesis, to Gildersleeve's Grammar (G.) and to Harkness's (H.).

2. Learn the meaning of the following Prepositions, observing the Case to be used with each: —

Among or **Between,** ***inter*** (acc.).	**Through,** ***per*** (acc.).
By or **From** (away from), ***ā, ab*** (abl.).	**To** (towards), ***ad*** (acc.).[a]
From (out of), ***ē, ex*** (abl.).	**Under,** ***sub.***[b]
In or **On,** ***in*** (abl.).	**With,** ***cum*** (abl.).[c]
Into, ***in*** (acc.).	**Without,** ***sine*** (abl.)

a. The preposition **ad** must be used to express *motion to.* Thus, in the sentence "he goes *to the river*," use **ad** with the Accusative; but, in "I give a book *to the boy*," use the Dative.

b. When **sub** indicates *rest in* a place, it takes the Ablative; when it indicates *motion towards*, and in such phrases as **sub vesperum**, *towards evening*, it takes the Accusative.

c. The preposition **cum** is regularly used to express *in company with.* Thus, in the sentence "he is walking *with his sister*," the ablative is used with **cum**; but in "he was killed *with a sword*," the ablative alone is used.

Digitized by Google

3. The learner is supposed to be familiar with the elementary Rules of Agreement: viz.,

1. Of the NOUN, in Apposition or as Predicate: § 183 (G. 319; H. 362, 3);
2. Of the ADJECTIVE with its Noun: §§ 186, 187 (G. 285; H. 438);
3. Of the VERB with its Subject-Nominative: § 204 (G. 202; H. 460).

4. The order of words in a Latin sentence is comparatively free; but the following Rules may serve as a guide to the beginner: —

1. In general, put the Subject first and the Verb last.
2. Any very emphatic word may be first or last.
3. An Adjective, except for emphasis, follows the noun; but may precede the preposition with its noun: as, *multīs in locīs.*
4. Put the Adverb immediately before the word which it modifies.

Oral Exercises.

NOTE. — The examples marked for oral practice may be written out, at the pleasure of the teacher; or they may conveniently serve for exercises at the blackboard. They are designed to enable the learner to avail himself, rapidly and easily, of the knowledge he has acquired by study of the Grammar; and to aid him in acquiring the command of a stock of useful words, without the labor of incessantly turning to a dictionary. In writing these and the accompanying exercises, it is advisable *to mark all the long vowels.*

1. The queen's daughter is beautiful. — 2. The anchors are
rēgīna *fīlia* *pulcher* *ancora*
large,[a] crooked, and strong. — 3. The gates of the town are
magnus *curvus* *validus* *porta* *oppidum*
open. — 4. In the woods were many wild-creatures. — 5. The
apertus. *silva* *multus* *fera*
moon was bright in a clear sky. — 6. The lofty gates of Corinth
lūna *lūcidus* *serēnus caelum* *altus* *Corinthus*

a. Insert "and."

Digitized by Google

were shut. — 7. We are boys, not men. — 8. Seneca[a] was a
clausus *puer* *nōn* *vir*
famous philosopher among the Romans.
clārus *philosophus* *Rōmānus*

Examples from Cæsar.

1. All Gaul is divided into three parts. — 2. Of all these the
omnis Gallia *dīvīsus* *trēs* *pars* *hic*
bravest are the Belgæ. — 3. This district was-called[b] *Tigurīnus;*
fortis *pāgus* (M.) *vocō*[1]
for every Helvetian state is divided into four districts. — 4. This
nam omnis *Helvētius* *cīvitās* *quattuor*
thing is announced to-the-Helvētii[c] through testimony.
rēs *ēnuntiō*[1] *indicium*

Write in Latin.

1. The son of Æneas was Ascanius.
2. Anger is a great fault.
3. Athens was the native-city of many[d] great men.
4. Few slaves were faithful to [their][e] masters (dat.).
5. Great men are the gift of the good gods.
6. The moon and stars were bright in the clear sky.
7. You are men, not boys.
8. The forces of the Romans were great.

Lesson 2.

Object-Accusative.

1. LEARN the definitions and construction of the Accusative as the object of transitive verbs: Gr. § 177, with *c*, comparing § 237 (G. 327 and 329. Rem. 1; H. 371. I. 1) and 2), also 371. 3).

RULE. — The Accusative is the case of the DIRECT OBJECT of a transitive verb: as, *Caesar Galliam superāvit.*

---

a. Proper names not translated are the same in Latin as in English. — *b.* The small figures denote the conjugation of the verb. — *c.* Words connected by hyphens are to be rendered by a single word (here by the dative). — *d.* Insert "and": § 208. *c* (G. 483. 1; H. 440. 1[2]). — *e.* Words in brackets are not to be translated.

Digitized by Google

Oral Exercises.

1. We see the moon and stars in-the-night. — 2. Horātius
videō[2] *stella* *noctū*

sustains a great storm of danger.[a] — 3. We enter a great wood,
sustineō[2] *procella* *periculum* *intrō*[1]

black with-darkness,[b] near the town (acc.). — 4. A lazy sailor
āter *tenebrae* *prope* *oppidum* *ignāvus nauta*

blames the winds and waves. — 5. You give good counsels to
culpō[1] *ventus* *unda* *dō*[1] *bonus* *cōnsilium*

[your] son. — 6. True glory holds a place among the stars.
filius *vērus* *glōria* *habeō*[2] *locus*

— 7. We praise the good,[c] we blame the bad. — 8. The
laudō[1] (plur.) *vituperō*[1] *malus*

Romans move [their] camp[d] from the plain. — 9. A cruel
moveō[2] *castra* *campus* *saevus*

wolf tears the tender lamb. — 10. The slaves fill great bowls
lupus *lacerō*[1] *tener* *agnus* *servus impleō*[2] *pōculum*

with-wine. — 11. The weary sailors enter a narrow strait. —
vīnum *fessus* *angustus* *fretum*

12. Chattering girls tell many [things][e] among themselves.[f]
garrulus *puella* *narrō*[1] *sē*

Examples from Cæsar.

1. The Helvētiī excel the rest-of[g] the Gauls in-manhood.[h] —
praecēdō[3] *reliquus* *Gallus* *virtūs*

2. The Æduī send ambassadors to Cæsar. — 3. This district
mittō[3] *lēgātus* *pāgus*

had-slain Lūcius Cassius the consul, and had-sent his army
interficiō[3] *is exercitus*

under the yoke.[i] — 4. Cæsar held-back his [men] from battle.
jugum *contineō*[2] *suus* *ā* *proelium*

— 5. Cæsar takes his right-hand; calls Dumnorix to him;
prendō[3] *dextra* *Dumnorig-* *sē*

sends-for [his] brother. — 6. He undertook the embassy to
adhibeō[2] *frāter* *is* *suscipiō*[3] *lēgātio* (F.)

the states.
cīvitās

---

a. When a noun is limited, as here, by an adjective and a genitive, the usual order is (1) adjective, (2) genitive, (3) noun. — *b.* Ablative. — *c.* See § 188, with Remark (G. 195. Rem. 1; H. 441. 1). — *d.* The Latin word for *camp* is the plural of *castrum*. — *e.* Neuter plural. — *f.* Or, *to one another*: see § 196. *f* (G. 212; H. 448. 1). — *g.* See § 193 (G. 287. Rem.; H. 441. 6). — *h.* Ablative: § 253 (G. 398; H. 429). — *i.* Acc.: § 152. *c* (G. 413, 419; H. 435. 1).

Digitized by Google

Write in Latin.

1. Slaves fear a cruel master.
2. The black[a] darkness of the forest terrifies[b] small boys.
3. We owe a great [sum of] money to the jeweller.
4. Few [men] love glory more than life.[c]
5. We often see wolves in the forest.
6. We praise the good less than we blame the bad.
7. The Tyrians[d] praise the beautiful queen.
8. We have riches [as] a gift of the bountiful gods.

Lesson 3.

Interrogative Forms.

1. LEARN the Forms of the simple sentence in § 171. *a*, *b*, *c*, and *d*, with the Definitions in §§ 179, 180, and read carefully § 180. *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, and *e* (G. Read carefully the coarse type of §§ 192 and 474; H. Learn the coarse type of §§ 345 and 346, and read carefully 345. II. 1 and 2).

2. Learn the meaning of the following Conjunctions: —

Both ... and, ***et ... et.***
Either ... or, ***aut ... aut.***
Whether ... or, ***utrum ... an.***
Neither ... nor, ***neque*** **(*nec*) ...** ***neque*** **(*nec*).**

3. Learn the meaning and use of the Interrogative Particles, and the forms of Questions and Answers: § 210, with *a*, *c*, *e*, and § 212 (G. 456, 457, 458, also 473, 3 and 2; H. 346. II. 1, with 1), 2), and 3): also 3). Also, the forms of Double or Alternative Questions: § 211 (G. 460 and 461; H. 346. 2. 1), 2), and 3)).

---

a. āter. — *b.* Plural. — *c.* Accusative. — *d. Tyrius.*

Digitized by Google

a. Compare the two forms of Questions — viz., *of simple fact* and *of special circumstance* — as stated in § 210. *a* and *e*; and learn the following Interrogative Words: —

Who? *quis?*	**Where?** *ubi?*	**Which** (of two)**?** *uter?*
What? *quid?*	**When?** *quando?*	**How?** *quōmodo?*
Why? *cūr?*	**Whither?** *quō?*	**How many?** *quot?*

b. Notice that an exclamatory sentence in Latin is precisely the same as the latter form of Question; while in English it is generally distinguished by the order of the words (§ 210. *e*, R.).

Examples.

Were you the friend of Marcus? ***erāsne Marcī amīcus?***

Were you not the friend of Marcus? Yes. ***nōnne erās Marcī amīcus? eram.***

Were you the friend of Marcus (*i.e.* you were not, were you?)**? No.** ***num erās Marcī amīcus? nōn eram.***

Were you the friend of Marcus or of Publius? ***utrum Marcī*** (better, ***Marcīne***) ***an Publiī amīcus erās?*** [Notice that, if it were ***Marcī aut Publiī***, it would mean that you might be the friend of both, or of neither.]

Model Sentences.

1. Marcus is the son of Quintus.
2. Marcus is not[a] the son of Publius.
3. Is Marcus the son of Quintus? Yes.[b]
4. Is not Marcus the son of Quintus? Yes.
5. Marcus is not the son of Publius, [is he]?[c] No.[b]
6. Who is the son of Quintus? Marcus.
7. Is Marcus or Lucius the son of Quintus?[d]
8. Both Marcus and Lucius are sons of Quintus.
9. Either Marcus or Lucius is a son of Quintus.
10. Neither Marcus nor Lucius is a son of Publius.
11. Which is the son of Quintus, Marcus or Lucius? Both.[e]
12. Which is the son of Publius? Neither (*neuter*).[f]

---

a. Put *nōn* immediately before the word which it negatives. — *b*. Use the verb: § 212 (G. 473. 3 and 2; H. 346. 3). — *c*. Use *num*: § 210. *c* (G. 458; H. 346. 1. 3)). — *d*. Put this in different forms: § 211. *d* (G. 460; H. 346. 2, 1) and 2)). — *e*. *uterque*. — *f*. These forms should be repeated until both words and meaning are perfectly familiar. Other simple sentences may be varied in like manner, for oral or blackboard practice, the above serving as a model for the several variations.

Digitized by Google

Oral Exercises.

1. Why do you fear the dangers of war? — 2. We see both
timeo[2] *periculum* *bellum* *video*[2]
with-the-eyes and the mind. — 3. How cold the water is! —
oculus *animus* *quam frigidus* *aqua*
4. How-great are thy kindnesses towards us! — 5. When were
quantus *tuus beneficium* *ergā* *nōs*
you at Rome or Athens?[a] — 6. Never; but I was often at
Rōma *Athēnae* *nunquam* *sed* *saepe*
Corinth.[a] — 7. We often see many both fools and blind. —
Corinthus *multus* *stultus* *caecus*
8. A good man neither harms [his] enemies, nor envies [them].
bonus *vir* *noceo*[2] *inimīcus* (dat.) *invideo*[2]

Write in Latin.

1. Do you see a narrow road in the forest? Yes.
2. How great are the gifts of the gods!
3. We were both weary and frightened.
4. We do not see wholly either with the eyes or with the mind (use *neque . . . neque*).
5. The queen has two slaves, the one[b] tall, the other[b] stout.
6. We have neither riches nor glory.
7. Does a good man ever envy the bad?
8. The dangers of war frighten cowards, but not strong men.
9. How-many fingers have-you on the right-hand? how many on the left?
10. Pompey was an honest man, no doubt,[c] and a good general; but proud, jealous, sullen, and-not[d] a true friend.

Lesson 4.

Use of Relatives.

NOTE. — The construction of the Personal, Demonstrative, and Possessive Pronouns is determined by their signification, and is the same as that of nouns and adjectives: see §§ 194–197, with the subsections (G. 198 and 290–299; H. 446–452), and compare the

a. See §§ 36. *c;* 40. *a* (G. 412; H. 421. i. and ii., with 48. 4 and 51. 6). — *b. alter* (acc.). — *c. quidem.* — *d. neque.*

Digitized by Google

special uses of the Demonstratives in § 102. They require, therefore, no separate exercises in syntax. The Relative, on the other hand, is used to introduce a subordinate clause, with subject, predicate, and grammatical construction distinct from that of the antecedent clause. This relation is expressed in the Rule for the agreement of Relatives: § 198 (G. 616; H. 445).

In the construction of Relative Clauses the following uses require to be noticed:—

1. The Rule of Gender: § 199 (G. 613. 3, iii; H. 445. 4);
2. Agreement with implied Antecedent: § 199. *b*;
3. Repetition of the Antecedent: § 200. *a* (G. 617; H. 445. 8);
4. Noun only in Relative Clause: id. *b*;
5. Omission of the Antecedent: id. *c* (G. 623; H. 445. 6);
6. Priority of Relative Clause: § 201. *c* (G. 622); see also § 201. *a*, *b*.

a. A Relative is often used in Latin where in English we use a Demonstrative with *and* or *but*. Compare § 201. *e* (G. 612, with Rem. 1; H. 453). Thus—

And since these things are so, ***quae cum ita sint.***
But if they [shall] **hesitate,** ***quī sī dubitābunt.***

b. Where AS or THAT is used in English as a relative word, it must be rendered in Latin by the relative word which corresponds to its demonstrative antecedent: as,

The same [person] **as before,** ***īdem quī ante.***
Such an orator as we know Cicero [to have been], ***tālis ōrātor quālem Cicerōnem nōvimus.***
I came to the same place that you directed, ***eōdem vēnī quō mandāstī.***
As many minds as men, ***quot hominēs tot sententiae.***

Oral Exercises.

1. The soldier you praise (§ 201. *a*) does not keep [his] faith.
mīles *laudo*[1] *servo*[1] *fidēs*

— 2. The day is-at-hand in-which[a] the Roman people yearly
diēs (M.) *insto*[1] *populus quotannis*

a. Repeat the noun: § 200. *a* (G. 617; H. 445. 8).

Digitized by Google

elects [its] magistrates.[a] — 3. Brutes do not move[b] from the
creo[1] *magistrātus*[4] *bestia* (F.) *commoveo*[2] *ex* *is*
spot in which they are born. — 4. The[c] greater the army, [so
locus *nātus* *exercitus*[4]
much] the[c] heavier is the loss. — 5. A sort [of people] who
gravis *clādēs* (F). *gens*
like-to tell-a-lie. — 6. Here-is [the man] I spoke-to yesterday.
libenter (adv.) *mentior*[4] *ecce* *adloquor*[3] *herī*

Examples from Cæsar.

1. Three parts, of which the Belgæ inhabit one, the Aquī-
pars *incolo*[3] *ūnus*
tānī another, the Celtæ a third. — 2. There-were in-all two
alius *tertius* *omnīnō* *duo*
ways by which they could go-out [from] home. — 3. It-was
iter *possum* *exeo* *domus*
full moon, [on] which day the sea[d] tides are greatest. — 4. He-
plēnus lūna *maritimus aestus*[4]
himself pushes-on to them [by] the same way that the enemy
contendo[3] *iter* *hostis* (plur.)
had gone. — 5. They send ambassadors, head of which embassy
eo *mitto*[3] *lēgātus* *princeps* *lēgātio*
was Divico, who had been chief of the Helvētii.
dux

Write in Latin.

1. The boys you were praising just now are very idle and troublesome.

2. Those are good citizens, who adorn the state by their warlike[e] virtues, and their own homes by their virtues.

3. Whatever I have of riches, I give all to you.

4. We honor Rome, which[f] is the head of all Italy.

5. There was war between the Romans and Samnites, both of-whom[g] were brave and warlike people.[h]

6. Which do you consider the greatest general, Cæsar, Scipio, or Hannibal? Which the better orator, Cicero or Demosthenes?

---

a. The small figure denotes the declension. — *b.* Understand "themselves": reverse the clauses. — *c.* Use *quō . . . eō*: § 106. *c* (G. 400, fourth illustrative sentence; H. 418). — *d.* This word is here an adjective. — *e.* *bellicus.* — *f.* See § 199 (G. 616. 3. ii.; H. 445. 4). — *g.* Nominative. — *h.* Plural.

Digitized by Google

Lesson 5.

The Passive Voice.

BESIDES the simpler uses of the Passive, corresponding to the meanings of the tenses as given in the Grammar, the following require especial attention: —

a. In the tenses of *completed action* in the Passive, — the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, — the participle (**amātus**, &c.) is treated as an adjective, agreeing in gender and number with the subject of the verb: as,

War has been prepared, *bellum parātum est.*
The Gauls had been subdued, *Gallī domitī erant.*
The ships were sunk, *nāvēs dēpressae sunt.*

b. In the Passive Construction, the object of the action becomes subject, while the subject (or agent), if a person, or treated as a person (personified), is expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**, BY; if not a person, by the ablative alone: as,

Cæsar subdued the Gauls, *Caesar domuit Gallōs.*
The Gauls were subdued by Cæsar, *Gallī ā Caesare domitī sunt.*
Hunger destroys men, *famēs necat hominēs.*
Men are destroyed by hunger, *hominēs famē necantur.*

c. An Intransitive verb may be used *impersonally*, in the third person singular of the Passive: as,

There was fighting (lit. **it** [a battle] **was fought**), ***pūgnātum est.***

Oral Exercises.

1. This city of-ours will be attacked by the Gauls. — 2. Great
oppūgno[1]
seas were sailed-over by the Carthaginians. — 3. Cæsar was
nāvigo[1] *Carthāginiēnsis*
slain by conspirators. — 4. The poor lamb will be mangled by a
occido[3] *conjūrātus* *miser* *āgnus* *lacero*[1]
wolf. — 5. A vast monster was overcome by a maiden. — 6. Ye
lupus *ingēns mōnstrum* *domo*[1] *virgin*

Digitized by Google

have been called the unhappiest of all women. — 7. In those
appello[1] *miser* *mulier* *ille*
places there-is-no-living outside the walls. — 8. The will of
habito[1] *extrā* (dat.)
that man is always heeded.
obtempero[1]

Examples from Cæsar.

1. When the Helvetii were informed of Cæsar's approach,
certiōrem facio[3] *dē* *adventus*[4]
they sent ambassadors to him. — 2. Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain, and his army beaten and sent under the yoke.
occīdo[3] *pello*[3]
— 3. Lucius Piso had been killed [in] the same battle as Cassius. — 4. So they fought[a] long and fiercely [in] doubtful
ita *diū* *ācriter* *anceps*
battles. — 5. When they had fought[a] long, our [men] gained
cum (subjunctive) *potior*[4]
the baggage and camp. — 6. There-was-terror throughout the
impedimenta (N. plur. abl.) *trepido*[1]
camp.[b] — 7. Lists were found in the camp of the Helvetii, and
tabula *reperio*[4]
brought to Cæsar, in which lists an estimate had been made-out
refero (irr.) *ratio* *cōnficio*[3]
by-name. — 8. Of those who returned home, the number was
nōmināt̄im *redeo* (acc.) *numerus*
found [to be] 110,000.
(gen.)

Write in Latin.

1. The faithful guards were praised by all the citizens.
2. The nightingale is charmed by her own songs.
3. Wreaths had been given to the victorious soldiers.
4. Let the mountain be held by our [men].
5. A-battle-will-be-fought to-morrow.
6. Between the wolf and dog was a long[c] dispute.[d]
7. Are you alarmed, Romans, at[e] the dangers of war?
8. There-was-terror throughout the city.[f]

---

a. Use the passive impersonal form: "it was fought." — *b.* *tōtīs castrīs.* — *c.* *diū.* — *d.* Verb: impers. pass. — *e.* Ablative. — *f.* *tōtus* (abl.).

Digitized by Google

Lesson 6.

Infinitive and Subject-Accusative.

1. THE following are the uses of the Infinitive:—

a. The Infinitive (*complementary*) is used where the sense would be incomplete without another action *of the same subject:* as,

I cannot change [my] **plans,** ***cōnsilia nōn possum mūtāre.***

Such verbs are *to be able, dare, begin, cease, wish,* and the like.

b. The Infinitive is used *like the nominative of a neuter noun,* in such sentences as—

To write (writing) **is useful,** ***scrībere est ūtile.***

c. It is used *like the accusative of a neuter noun,* in such sentences as—

The enemy prepare to storm the town, ***hostēs parant expūgnāre oppidum.***

d. In either of these uses, it may take as subject the accusative of a noun or pronoun: as,

For an old man to dance is unbecoming, ***senem saltāre indecōrum est.***

I see that you are lame, ***videō tē esse claudum.***

2. The Infinitive with Subject-Accusative is used with verbs and other expressions of Knowing, Thinking, Telling, and Perceiving: as,

He says [that] **the hill is held by the enemy,** ***dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī.***

There was a report that Catiline had armed the slaves, ***rūmor erat Catilīnam servōs armāsse.***

Oral Exercises.

1. It is disgraceful to show [your] back to the enemy [in] flight. — 2. No-man can be happy without virtue. — 3. The

turpis *do*[1] *tergum* (pl.) (plur.) *nēmo* *beātus*

Digitized by Google

burden should be-fitted to the strength. — 4. It is the greatest
onus *dēbeo*[2] *apto*[1] *vīs* (pl.) *summus*
folly to persist in [one's] faults. — 5. The neighbors falsely
dēmentia (gen.) *persevēro*[1] *vitium* *vīcīnus* *falsō*
suppose that I am rich. — 6. They-say [that] the enemy have
existimo[1] *dīves*
advanced. — 7. Word-is-brought [that] the Germans have
advento[1] *nūntio*[1] *Germānus*
crossed the Rhine.
trānseo *Rhēnus*

Examples from Cæsar.

1. He says [that] it is very-easy to win the-whole-of Gaul. —
perfacilis *potior*[4] *tōtus* (gen.)
2. The Helvetii attempt to do that which they had-resolved. —
cōnor[1] *cōnstituo*[3]
3. It-was-reported to Cæsar, [that] they were-attempting to
nūntio[1] *is*
make [their] way through our province. — 4. He says[a] he can-
iter *prōvincia*
not,[a] by the custom and example of the Roman people, give to
mōs *exemplum*
any[b] the right-of-way through the province. — 5. They now
iter *jam*
thought themsveles[c] ready for this thing. — 6. The Helvetii [he
parātus *is* *rēs*
says] will go[d] to that quarter and will-remain there, where Cæsar
pars *sum* *ibi* *ubi*
has appointed.[e]
cōnstituo[3]

Write in Latin.

1. It is a grand[f] thing to be made consul (acc.).
2. It is beneficial[g] for a sick[h] man to sleep.
3. It is-better[i] to live honorably[j] than to be born honorably.
4. There was, however, a rumor that the election[k] would be[l] put off.[m]
5. It is lawful for no man (acc.) to lead an army against [his] country.

---

a. Use *nego:* § 209. *b* (G. 446). — *b.* Use either *ūllus* or *quisquam.* — *c.* Insert *esse.* — *d.* Use fut. part., omitting *esse.* — *e.* Pluperf. (or perf.) subj. — *f. māgnificus.* — *g. ūtilis.* — *h. aegrōtus.* — *i. praestat.* — *j. honestē.* — *k. comitia* (plur.). — *l. fore ut.* — *m. differo* (imp. subj.).

Digitized by Google

6. The scouts[a] report that the Germans have already crossed[b] the Rhine.

7. I hear that Cicero has set out[c] for-Athens (acc.).

8. Divitiacus said that he knew these things were true.

9. I remember that [when] a boy I saw the orator Hortensius.

10. I take it ill[d] that I am poor.

Lesson 7.

Participles: Ablative Absolute.

THE following are special uses of the Participle: —

a. The Participle is often used to describe some circumstance: as,

The envoys saluted Lucius Quinctius while ploughing (at the plough), ***arantem L. Quinctium lēgātī salūtāvērunt.***

b. A Noun and Participle are used together in the ablative to define the time or circumstances of an action (*ablative absolute*): as,

If but few stand by me, I will not despair, ***paucīs ā mē stantibus, nōn dēspērābo.***

When the enemy were put to flight, Cæsar called back his men, ***hostibus fugātīs, Caesar suōs revocāvit.***

NOTE. — The Ablative Absolute is very rarely found except with the present active and the perfect passive participle.

Oral Exercises.

1. After the-expulsion-of the kings, consuls were created.
post *expello*[3] (part.) *creo*[1]

— 2. Cæsar followed-up the Gauls [and] slaughtered [them]
adsequor[3] (part.) *trucido*[1]

while-in-flight. — 3. I will not send your son to-Rome without-
fugio[3] *mitto*[3] (acc.)

your-consent. — 4. Pythagoras came into Italy [while] Tar-
tū-invītus *venio*[4]

quinius Superbus [was] king. — 5. Lysias, when [his] son was

---

a. explōrātor. — b. trānseo. — c. proficiscor.[3] *— d. aegrē fero.*

Digitized by Google

banished from the state, lived many years at-Sardis. — 6. Cati-
pello[3] *ē* *annus* (acc.) (abl. pl.)

line by the-murder-of [his] son made his house empty for a
neco[1] *domus* *vacuus*

guilty marriage.
scelestus *nuptiae*

Examples from Cæsar.

1. Having-attacked them while encumbered and off-their-guard,
adgredior[3] *impedio*[4] *inopīnāns*

he-cut-down a great part of them. — 2. When this battle was
concīdo[3] *proelium*

over, he provided [for] making a bridge over the Arar. — 3. The
facio[3] *cūro*[1] (ger.) *pōns* (M.) *in* (abl.)

men, having sent [their] javelins, easily broke-through the
mīles (pass.) *pilum* *facile* *perfringo*[3]

enemy's phalanx. — 4. When this was scattered, drawing [their]
(plur.) *phalanx* (F.) *is* *disjicio*[3] *dēstringo*[3] (pass.)

swords, they made an attack upon them. — 5. When the hill
gladius *impetus* *in* *mōns*

was taken, [and] as our [men] were coming up, the enemy
capio[3] *succēdo*[3]

attempted to out-flank our men on the march [on their]
aggredior[3] *circumvenio*[4] *ex* *iter*

exposed flank. — 6. [In] all this fight, not-a-man could see an
apertus *latus*[3] *proelium* *nēmo*

enemy with-his-back-turned.
āverto[3]

Write in Latin.

1. After ending[a] the war with the Veneti, Cæsar put[b] all the senate to death[b] [and] sold the rest [of the inhabitants] at-public-sale.[c]

2. We strive[d] in vain when nature opposes.[e]

3. The father, despairing-of[f] the arrival of his son, set-out[g] for-Rome (acc.).

4. The Latins, having lost[h] [their] army, begged peace of (*a*) the Romans.

5. The Romans, when the city was taken by the Gauls, retreated[i] to the Capitol.

---

a. *cōnficio*[3] (abl. abs.). — *b.* *neco*[1] (abl. abs.). — *c.* *sub corōnā.* — *d.* *contendo.*[3] — *e.* *repūgno.*[1] — *f.* *dēspēro.*[1] — *g.* *proficiscor.*[3] — *h.* *āmitto.*[3] — *i.* *sē recipere.*[3]

Digitized by Google

II. — Constructions of Cases.

1. — *Object-Cases.*

Note. — Observe that all the four Oblique Cases (§ 31. *g*) may be used in Latin as Object-Cases, with different classes of verbs, being represented alike in English by the objective case. Thus —

1. **I see the man,** ***hominem video*** (Accusative);
2. **I serve the man,** ***hominī servio*** (Dative);
3. **I pity the man,** ***hominis misereor*** (Genitive);
4. **I treat the man as a friend,** ***homine familiāriter ūtor*** (Ablative).

Lesson 8.

Uses of the Accusative.

Subordinate to the use of the Accusative as Direct Object (*Lesson* 2), are the following: —

a. Its use with verbs of Feeling: § 237. *b* (G. 329. R.[1]; H. 371, 3, 1));

b. With verbs of Sensation (taste and smell): id. *c* (G. id.; H. id. 2));

c. After compounds (chiefly with **circum** and **trāns**): id. *d* (G. 330; H. id. 4);

d. After Impersonal verbs (**decet**, &c.): id. *e* (G. 345. R.[1]).

e. The Cognate Accusative (so called) with verbs of kindred meaning: § 238 (G. 331; H. 371. 1, 3)).

f. As Secondary Object —

1. With verbs of Naming, &c.: § 239. *a* (G. 334; H. 373);
2. With Compounds: id. *b* (G. 330. R.[1]; H. 374. 6);
3. With verbs of Asking and Teaching: id. *c* (G. 333; H. 374);
4. With **cēlo** and **lateo**: id. *d*.

Oral Exercises.[a]

1. Little-by-little the Germans were-accustomed to cross the
paulātim *cōnsuēsco*[3] (plup.) *trānseo*
Rhine. — 2. Three divisions of [their] forces the Helvetii had
Rhēnus *pars* *cōpiae*

a. In these exercises the examples are, where convenient, but not uniformly, taken from Cæsar.

Digitized by Google

now led-across the Rhine. — 3. Hereafter we shall live a safer
jam *trādūco*[3] *posthāc* *vīvo*[3] *tūtus*
life. — 4. We have laughed enough [at] your jokes,[a] full of
rideo[2] *satis* *jocus* *plēnus*
fun. — 5. Every-man grieves-at his-own miseries. — 6. I will
facētiae *quisque* *doleo*[2] *miseria*
teach you your fate. — 7. We beseech peace [of] all the gods
doceo[2] *fātum* (pl.) *ōro*[1]
and goddesses. — 8. I will conceal the way [from] all. — 9. Some
cēlo[1] *iter* *nōnnūllus*
teach children only [what is] useful, [but] overlook [what is]
puer *sōlum* *ūtilis* (pl.) *nēglego*[3]
honorable. — 10. The consul was first asked [his] opinion. —
honestus *rogo*[1] *sententia*
11. The people elect [as] consuls Brutus and Collatinus. —
creo[1]
12. The Gauls begged peace of[b] Cæsar.
peto[3]

Write in Latin.

1. Cæsar led his forces across the Rhine.
2. They afterwards lived a safer life.
3. My son complains[c] [of] his fortune.
4. We shall go once [on] the last journey.
5. All men laugh-at folly: all men grieve-at misery.
6. These cakes have-a-taste-of cinnamon.
7. This thing is hid from most.[d]
8. Do you only beg[e] pardon of the gods.
9. I did not hide from you [my] friend's opinion.
10. Why do you ask me that? Ask your father.
11. The consul Nero[f] skilfully concealed his march [from] Hannibal.
12. The senate saluted Cicero [as] father of [his] country.
13. Lucius Junius Brutus was called the liberator[g] of Rome.
14. The people elected Lucius Junius Brutus and Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus [as] first consuls.
15. An old herdsman in vain begged[e] [his] liberty [of] Vespasian.

---

a. § 79. *b* (G. 78; H. 141. — *b.* § 239. *c*, Rem. (G. 333. R.[2]; H. 374. 3, 4)). — *c. queror.* — *d. plērique.* — *e. posco.*[3] — *f.* Put the name before the title. — *g.* § 185 (G. 197; H. 373. 4).

Digitized by Google

Lesson 9.

Dative of Indirect Object.

THE uses of the Dative are the following: —

a. As Secondary Object, with transitives: § 225, with *c*, *d*, *e* (G. 344; H. 384. ii.);

b. As Indirect Object, with intransitives: § 226 (H. 384. i.).

c. With verbs of special signification: § 227 (G. 345; H. 385);

d. With Compounds: §§ 228, 229 (G. 346, with last illustration; H. 386, id. 2).

NOTE. — For passive use, see § 230 (G. 208; H. 301. 1).

Oral Exercises.

1. People believe [their] eyes more than [their] ears. —
homo *crēdo*[3] *amplius* *quam* *auris*

2. Some-people prefer the slightest gratification to the weightiest
nōnnūlli *antepōno*[3] *levis* *dēlectātio* *gravis*
advantage. — 3. The immortal gods will pardon you [for] this
ūtilitās *immortālis* *ignōsco*[3]
fault. — 4. The slaves cursed their masters. — 5. Men sound
dēlictum *maledīco*[3] *dominus* *miles* *integer*
and fresh relieve the weary. — 6. Protect our innocence, [O]
recēns *succurro*[3] *fessus* *subvenio*[4]
judges. — 7. A mother will always be obeyed by (*ā*) a good son.
jūdex *pāreo*[2]
— 8. The temples of the gods must-be-spared[a] by the victorious
parco[3] *victor*
soldiery (dat.). — 9. Both consuls had indulged that legion. —
mīles *uterque* (sing.)
10. I could never be persuaded that souls are mortal.[b]
nunquam *persuādeo*[2] *animus*

Write in Latin.

1. The ant gets itself food in summer-time.
2. The sun shall give thee signs.
3. You pardon yourself; others you pardon not.
4. Patience heals[c] any[d] pain.
5. He told me every thing.

---

a. Use the participle in *dus*, with *est*. — *b*. Accusative and Infinitive. — *c*. *medeor*. — *d*. *quivis*.

Digitized by Google

6. I mercifully spared the wretched man.
7. A faithful soldier serves the state.
8. The soldiers spared [a] the temples of the gods.
9. Our men pressed-hard [b] the flying Gauls.

(*Passive.*)

10. Your glory is envied.
11. Liars are not believed.[c]
12. The temples of the gods were spared.
13. That age is not envied, but even favored.
14. The authority of the senate will be obeyed.
15. Clodius was distrusted by all good citizens.

Lesson 10.

Genitive and Ablative.

THE Genitive and Ablative are used as object-cases with only a few verbs, of the classes designated as follows: —

a. The Genitive is the object of —

1. Verbs of Memory: § 219 (G. 375; H. 406. ii. and 410. i.);
2. Verbs of Accusing, &c. (of *charge* or *penalty*): § 220 (G. 377; H. 410. ii.);
3. Verbs of Pity: § 221. *a* (G. 376; H. 406. i.);
4. The Impersonals **miseret**, etc.: id. *b* (G. id.; H. 410. iii.);
5. The Impersonals **rēfert** and **interest**: § 222 and *a* (G. 381. 2; H. 408. 1) and 2));
6. Verbs of Plenty and Want (rarely): § 223 (G. 389. R.[2]; H. 409. 1).

b. The Ablative is the object of the Deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor,** with several of their compounds: § 249 (G. 405; H. 419. i.).

N. B. With these verbs the Ablative is strictly an *ablative of means* or *source*, rather than a direct object of the verb.

REMARK. — Notice the special use of the Genitive with **potior**: § 249. *a* (G. 405. R.[1]; H. 409. 3).

---

a. tempero. — b. insto. — c. crēdo.

Digitized by Google

Oral Exercises.

1. An old-man remembers [his] old griefs. — 2. Catiline
senex *memini* *vetus* *dolor* *Catilina*
admonished one of his poverty, [and] another of his ambition.
admoneo[2] *egestās* *cupido*
— 3. Every-man regrets his own fortune. — 4. This boy is
quisque *paenitet*
neither ashamed nor tired of his sloth. — 5. I am weary of
pudet *taedet* *ignāvia* *taedet*
these daily vexations. — 6. Verres is charged with extortion.
quot.diānus *molestia* *arguo*[3] *repetundae*
— 7. All the conspirators were capitally[a] condemned. —
conjūrātus *damno*[1]
8. Remember (said he) the ancient valor of the Helvetii.
reminiscor[3] *inquam* *pristinus* *virtūs*
— 9. The Romans got-hold-of the baggage and the camp of
potior[4] *impedimentum* (pl.)
Ariovistus. — 10. At-length the eyes do not fulfil their office.
aliquando *fungor* *mūnus*
— 11. Pity a frail perishing race. — 12. We enjoy all the
misereor[2] *fragilis* *cadūcus* *gēns.* *fruor*[3]
advantages of life together with [our] friends. — 13. I feed on
commodum *ūnā* *vescor*[3]
milk, cheese, [and] meat, writes the Scythian Anacharsis.[b]
lāc *cāseus* *caro* *Scythēs*

Write in Latin.

1. Cato admonished the judges of the laws and of [their] oath.[c]

2. We have-no-need[d] of your help.

3. The man is neither ashamed nor sorry for his cowardice.

4. The Athenians charged Socrates with impiety.

5. Forget slaughter and conflagration.

6. I lack not gold or silver.

7. You have charged me in-my-absence[e] with a capital offence.[f]

8. Brutus condemned to death[a] his two sons.

9. The Macedonian[g] phalanx employed[h] very-long[i] spears.

---

a. See § 220. *a* (G. 377. R.[1]; H. 410. 5, 1) and 3)). — *b.* Put the name first. — *c. religio.* — *d. nihil indigere.* — *e. absēns.* — *f. rēs capitālis.* — *g. Macedonicus.* — *h. ūtor.* — *i. praelongus.*

Digitized by Google

10. A brave man bravely performs his duty.

11. A base man takes-advantage-of[a] the ignorance or folly of-others.

12. We enjoy the gifts of the earth, which therefore we call fruits and crops.

13. The soldiers of-the-legion[b] used a shield, a javelin, and a short sword.

2. — *With Adjectives.*

Lesson II.

Genitive with Adjectives.

ADJECTIVES which take the Genitive are the following: —

a. Adjectives of Desire, Memory, &c.: § 218. *a* (G. 373; H. 399. 2, 2));

b. Verbals in **ax** and Participles in **ns**: id. *b* (G. 374; H. id. 2, 1));

c. Adjectives of Quality, &c.: id. *c* (G. id. R.[2]; H. id. 3);

d. Adjectives used as Nouns: id. *d* (G. 356. R.[1]; H. 391. 2, 4)).

NOTE. — Compare § 218. *d* with the Remark under § 188.

Oral Exercises.

1. The Gauls are barbarous, and unacquainted-with our
barbarus *imperītus*
customs. — 2. The mind of man is ignorant of fate and of
cōnsuētūdo (sing.) *mēns* (plur.) *nescius* *fātum*
coming destiny. — 3. I have sent men well-acquainted-with
futūrus *sors* *perītus* (superl.)
those regions. — 4. You have a leader mindful of you,[c] forgetful
regio *dux* *memor* *oblītus*
of himself. — 5. The man had[d] a mind fierce and uncon-
ferōx *im-*
trollable in wrath. — 6. [His] body was capable-of-enduring
potēns *īra* *patiēns*

---

a. abūtor. — *b. legiōnārius.* — *c.* See § 194. *b* (G. 362). — *d.* Use *esse* with dative.

Digitized by Google

abstinence, watching, [and] cold. — 7. Our life is full of snares
inedia *vigilia* *algor* *insidiae*
and fear. — 8. No age was more-fruitful-in virtue.
metus[4] *aetās* *ferāx*

Write in Latin.

1. This man is eager[a] for glory and greedy[b] of praise.
2. Most boys are careless[c] about antiquities.
3. Gaul is full of Roman citizens.
4. Night alone was conscious of this deed.[d]
5. This boy is very like[e] his father.
6. The consul was full of plans, [but] sparing[f] in words.
7. The river Rhine is common[g] to Gaul and Germany.
8. Achilles, bravest of the Greeks, was ungovernable[g] in wrath.

Lesson 12.

Dative with Adjectives.

THE Dative is used after Adjectives, to denote that *to which the given quality is directed,* or *for which it exists.* Under this use are included: —

a. The dative of Fitness, Nearness, &c.;
b. Of Likeness and Unlikeness;
c. Of Service and Inclination: § 234. *a* (G. 356; H. 391. 1).

REMARK. — Observe the use of the prepositions **ad** to denote the End: § 234. *b* (G. 356. R.[3]; H. 391. 2, 1), (2)); and **in** or **ergā** with words of Inclination: id. *c* (G. id. R.[2]; H. id. (1)).

Also, notice the use of **similis** with the Genitive: id. *d*, Rem. (G. id. R.[1]; H. id. 4).

Oral Exercises.

1. Another's virtue is always alarming to tyrants. — 2. A king
aliēnus *formidulōsus* *tyrannus*
is always exposed to faithless counsels. — 3. To each-one of the
obnoxius *infidus* *cōnsilium* *ūnusquisque*
virtues some vice is next-neighbor. — 4. The-rest-of the sons
aliquis *finitimus* *cēterus*

---

a. cupidus. — *b. avidus.* — *c. neglegēns.* — *d. facinus.* — *e.* § 218. *d* (G. 356. R.[1]; H. 391. 2, 4)). — *f. parcus.* — *g. impotēns.*

Digitized by Google

were survivors of [their] father. — 5. That grief was common
superstes *dolor* *commūnis*
to the three brothers. — 6. Fathers are sometimes unjust to their-
nōnnunquam iniquus
own sons. — 7. Children are generally like [their] parents. —
liberī (plur.) *plērumque* *parēns*
8. When these things were settled, having-found a time fit for
cōnstituo[3] *nanciscor*[3] *idōneus ad*
sailing, he set-sail about the third watch (abl.). — 9. He was
nāvigo[1] *solvo*[3] *ferē* *vigilia*
friendly to the Helvetii, because he had taken in marriage the
amicus *quod* *dūco*[3] *mātrimōnium*
daughter of Orgetorix.

Write in Latin.

1. Death is like a sleep.
2. To a frail ship all winds are contrary.
3. The death of Socrates was in-harmony[a] with his life.
4. I have noticed a harbor fit[b] for our ships.
5. Livius was of-the-same-age[c] with Ennius.
6. Not even the gods — so they boast — are a-match-for[d] the Swabians.[e]
7. Radishes[f] are bad[g] for the teeth, says Pliny.[h]
8. This thing is easy for me, [but] hard for you.
9. Simple food is good[i] for children.[j]
10. The speech of Marius was very pleasing to the people.

Lesson 13.

Ablative with Adjectives.

THE uses of the Ablative with Adjectives are the following: —

a. Of Freedom and Want (also **opus** and **ūsus**): § 243. *d*, *e* (G. 388[3], 373. R.[4], 390; H. 419. iii., 419. v.);

b. Of Source (the participles **nātus**, &c.): § 244. *a* (G. 395; H. 425. 3, 1));

c. Comparatives: § 247, with *a* (G. 399; H. 417, with 1);

---

a. cōnsentāneus. — b. idōneus. — c. aequālis. — d. pār. — e. Suēvi. — f. raphanus. — g. inimicus. — h. ait Plinius. — i. ūtilis. — j. puer.

Digitized by Google

d. Of Abundance (participles and verbals): § 248. *c* (G. 389. R.[3]; H. 419. iii.);

e. Of Worth: § 245. *a* (G. 398. R.[2]; H. 419. iv.);

f. To denote *degree of difference:* § 250 (G. 400; H. 418).

Oral Exercises.

1. A city bare of defence requires aid. — 2. Even a wise-man
nūdus *praesidium* *posco*[3] *op-* *etiam* *sapiēns* (dat.)
has need *opus* of friends. — 3. Tiberius Gracchus, born-of a most-
noble mother. — 4. An honorable death is preferable to a base
nōbilis *honestus* *potior* *turpis*
life. — 5. Nothing has been found among men rarer than a
(abl.) *invenio*[4] *rārus*
perfect orator. — 6. We esteem all human [things] inferior to
dūco[3]
virtue. — 7. He waged wars more bravely than successfully.[a] —
(abl.) *gero*[3] *fortiter* *fēliciter*
8. It is a space of not more[b] than six hundred feet. — 9. The
spatium *amplius* *pēs*
house of Verres was full of plundered ornaments. — 10. Good
refertus *rapio*[3] *ornāmentum*
men dread a life full and crowded with delights. — 11. Ireland
metuo[3] *cōnfertus* *voluptās* *Hibernia*
is smaller by half, as is reckoned, than Britain. — 12. Another
parvus *dimidium ut* *aestimo*[1] *alter*
way through the province, much easier and more expeditious.
iter *facilis* *expeditus*

Write in Latin.

1. What Roman is free from this dishonor[c]?

2. The army was in-lack[d] of all necessaries.

3. Cato, said his friends, was clear[e] of every human fault.

4. I have need[f] of your help.

5. Thou art sprung[g] not from human blood, but from divine stock.

6. Ignorance of future evils is better than knowledge.

7. From[h] the tongue of the aged Nestor, says[i] Homer, flowed speech sweeter than honey.

---

a. See § 192, with *a* (G. 314; H. 444. 2). — *b.* See § 247. *c* (G. 311. R.[4]; H. 417. 3. — *c. dēdecus.* — *d. egēns.* — *e. vacuus.* — *f. opus.* — *g. ortus.* — *h. ex.* — *i. ait.*

Digitized by Google

8. These things are harder than-one-would-think.[a]

9. In the battle at-Cannæ[b] the Romans lost more than 40,000 men.

10. The speech of the consul was more true than pleasing to the people.

11. He judged you unworthy of every honor.

12. We suffer no more from foreign enemies than [from] those-at-home.[c]

13. Corinth was the richest city of Greece in pictures, statues, and gold.

14. Cicero was six years older than Cæsar.

15. The more cautiously you go, the sooner[d] you will arrive.

16. Veii was[e] about twenty miles distant[e] from Rome.

17. The battle of Cannæ[b] was fought seventeen years before[f] [that] of Zama.[g]

8. — *Miscellaneous Uses.*

Lesson 14.

Uses of the Accusative.

THE special uses of the Accusative are the following: —

a. Adverbial: § 240. *a*, *b* (G. 331. R.[3]; H. 380, with 2);
b. Of Specification: id. *c* (G. 332, with R.[1]; H. 380, with 1);
c. Of Exclamation: id. *d* (G. 340; H. 381).

REMARK. — The Accusative of Specification is rarely used except in poetry, or in poetic description, and should generally be avoided in writing Latin prose (compare the Ablative of Specification: *Lesson* 16).

Oral Exercises.

1. The Swabians live for the greatest part on milk and meat [of domestic animals]. — 2. I [am] extremely glad on your

Suēvī *lāc* *pecus* *māgnopere gaudeo*[2]

a. opinio. — *b. Cannēnsis.* — *c. domesticus.* — *d. citius.* — *e. abesse ā.* — *f.* Insert *quam.* — *g. Zamēnsis.*

Digitized by Google

account. — 3. He was a man in other [respects] excellent. —
vicis *vir* *cēterus* *ēgregius*

4. When he was at-that-time of life, he was made chief-com-
cum (subj.) *aetās* *im-*

mander. — 5. He was hit in the right knee with a stone. —
perātor *ico*[3] *dexter genū* *lapis*

6. I said that they would-come at that time. — 7. Alas, the
(fut. part.) *tempus* *heu*

folly of men! — 8. Oh the deceitful hope of man, and [his]
dēmentia *fallāx* (plur.)

frail fortune, and our vain strifes!
fragilis *inānis contentio*

Write in Latin.

1. I am often sorry on your account.[a]

2. At that time Romulus was king.

3. A man at that age ought to be more discreet[b] than daring.[c]

4. Hannibal was severely wounded right in the thigh[d] with a dart.[e]

5. The commander exhorted his [men] at-length.[f]

6. The maidens put on a long robe.[g]

7. Ah![h] the faith of gods and men!

8. What a man! what impudence! what audacity!

9. Happy the Roman chiefs of-old.[i]

10. Ah![j] unhappy me!

Lesson 15.

Dative: Idiomatic Uses.

SPECIAL or idiomatic uses of the Dative are the following: —

1. Of Possession: § 231 (G. 349; H. 387).
2. Of Service (*predicate dative*): § 233 (G. 350; H. 390).

---

a. vicis. — *b. prūdēns.* — *c. audāx* (comparative). — *d. adversum femur.* — *e. trāgūla.* — *f. multa.* — *g.* § 240. *c.* N. (G. 332. 2; H. 374. 7). — *h. prō.* — *i. quondam.* — *j. heu.*

Digitized by Google

3. Of Reference: § 235 (G. 343), including the Ethical Dative: § 236 (G. 351 ; H. 389).

REMARK. — After the Dative used with expressions of Naming (as **nōmen est**), observe that the name is more commonly in the Dative by attraction; as *huic puerō nōmen est Marcō* rather than *Marcus*.

Oral Exercises.

1. To the boy was given the name *Egerius*, from [his]
indo[3] *ab*
poverty. — 2. In this person was a manly soul. — 3. The
inopia *homo* *insum* *virīlis ingenium*
friendship of the Roman people ought to be our ornament and
(acc.) *oportet* *ornāmentum*
defence, not [our] ruin. — 4. Avarice is a great harm to men.
praesidium *dētrimentum* *avāritia* *malum*
— 5. When this thing was told, Cæsar sent all the cavalry out
(rel.) *nūntio*[1] *equitātus*
of the camp, as a relief to his [troops]. — 6. A fine house is
castra *auxilium* *pulcher*
built for [its] masters, not for mice. — 7. Ortygia is situated on
aedificō[1] *dominus* *mūs* *situs*
the right side as-you-enter[a] the great harbor of Syracuse. —
pars *intro*[1] *portus* *Syrācūsae*
8. What does this speech mean?[b]
ōrātio *volo*

Write in Latin.

1. A sick man always has hope.
2. The surname of Lucius Scipio was Asiaticus; of Publius his brother, Africanus.
3. The name of this disease is avarice.
4. We used to give him the nickname[c] of sluggard.
5. This book was of great service[d] to me.
6. For whose (dat.) advantage[e] is this?
7. The Germans came to our relief.[f]
8. I seek for myself no defence against danger[g] or helps to honors.[g]

---

a. See § 235. *b* (G. 354). — *b.* Insert *sibi*. — *c.* *cōgnōmen*. — *d.* *ūsus*. — *e.* *bonum*. — *f.* *auxilium*. — *g.* Dative.

Digitized by Google

9. A good man seeks wealth not for himself only, but for his children and friends.

10. Anticyra is situated[a] on the left as you enter the Corinthian gulf.

Lesson 16.

Uses of the Ablative.

AMONG the miscellaneous uses of the Ablative may be reckoned the following: —

1. Of Cause, Manner, Means, and Instrument: §§ 245, 248 (G. 401, 403, 406; H. 414, with 2, 3, 4);
2. Of Quality: § 251 (G. 402; H. 428);
3. Of Price: § 252 (G. 404; H. 416), comparing the Genitive of Value: § 252. *a* (G. 379, 380; H. 402. 2, 2));
4. Of Specification: § 253 (G. 398; H. 429).

Oral Exercises.

1. Some [people] by [reason of] some disease and dulness
quīdam *aliquis* *morbus* *stupor*
of sense do not perceive the sweetness of food. — 2. What
sēnsus[4] *sentio*[4] *suāvitās* *cibus*
is-done through good-will, that you charge [as] done through
fio *benevolentia* *criminor*[1]
hate. — 3. How many are unworthy[b] of the light, and yet the
odium *indignus* *lūx* *tamen*
day arises! — 4. Great things are done, not by strength or
orior[3] (superl.) *gero*[3] *vīs* (pl.)
speed of body, but by hardihood of soul. — 5. A man of most
celeritās (plur.) *fortitūdo* *animus*
vigorous genius then ruled the state. — 6. There was between
ācer *ingenium* *tum* *rego*[3]
Labienus and the enemy a stream of difficult passage,[c] [with]
(plur.) *flūmen* *difficilis* *trānsitus*[4]
steep banks. — 7. The Gauls with the same speed pushed-on
praeruptus rīpa *contendo*[3]
to our camp. — 8. I have bought this estate at a very-large
mercor[1] *fundus*

---

a. situs. — *b.* See § 245. 2*a* (G. 398. R.2; H. 419. iv.). — *c.* Insert "and."

Digitized by Google

price. — 9. My conscience is [worth] more to me than every-
pecūnia *cōnscientia*
body's talk. — 10. All the Gauls differ from one another[a] in
sermo *differo*
language, customs, [and] laws.
lingua *īnstitūtum* *lēx*

Write in Latin.

1. For the sake of the republic, I accuse Lucius Catiline.

2. The Roman people held[b] the young Scipio worthy[b] of the highest honors.

3. I judge[c] him most unworthy of every honor.

4. Ducks delight[d] chiefly in marshy[e] places.

5. Bulls defend themselves with [their] horns, boars with [their] tusks.

6. Great things are-done[f] not by strength or speed of body, but by counsel and valor.

7. Links of-steel[g] are worn-out[h] by constant use.

8. The barbarians were of vast size[i] of body (plur.).

9. A mountain of great height overhangs[j] the town.

10. Cæsar was a man of extraordinary force[k] of intellect,[l] and of remarkable skill[m] in-war.[n]

11. I have sold my house for fifteen talents.

12. That oration cost[o] him a-great-deal-of labor.

13. In glory Cicero was far inferior to Cæsar,[p] but superior in eloquence and wisdom.

14. In laws and language the Greeks widely[q] differ from the Romans, but in warlike[n] glory they are nearly equal.

15. My brother is lame of the left[r] foot.

16. The Spartans excelled[s] all the other Greeks[t] in fidelity and reverence to the laws.[u]

17. The Germans were a race of tall[v] stature, fair complexion, blue[w] eyes, courage in war,[u] and great strength of body.

---

a. inter sē: § 196. *f* (G. 212; H. 448. 1). — *b. dignor.*[1] — *c. aestimo.*[1] — *d. dēlector.*[1] — *e. palūster.* — *f. gero.*[3] — *g. ferreus.* — *h. contero.*[3] — *i. māgnitūdo.* — *j. impendeo.*[2] — *k. vis.* — *l. ingenium.* — *m. scientia.* — *n. rei bellicae.* — *o. sto.*[1] — *p.* Ablative. — *q. multum.* — *r. laevus.* — *s. antecello.* — *t.* Dative. — *u.* Genitive. — *v. grandis.* — *w. caeruleus.*

Digitized by Google

Lesson 17.

Time and Place.

THE uses especially requiring to be noted are the following: —

1. The Accusative of Duration and Extent: §§ 256, 257 (G. 337, 335; H. 378);
2. The Ablative of Time: § 256 (G. 392; H. 426);
3. The Genitive of Measure: § 257. *a* (G. 364. R.);
4. The relations of Place, especially the Locative forms: § 258. *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (G. 410, 411, 412, with R.[1]; H. 379, 421. i. ii., 423. i. 424. 1, 2), and the Locative uses of the Ablative: § 258. *f* (G. 384–386; H. 422);
5. The expression of Dates: § 259. *e* (G. App.; H. 708).

REMARK. — With all names of places, AT meaning *near* (not *in*) is to be expressed by **ad** or **apud** with the accusative.

Oral Exercises.

1. The next night Cæsar moved [his] camp. — 2. We have-been-waiting[a] [for] you all summer. — 3. I spend whole days with Marcus, and quite-often a part of the night. — 4. We have besieged this city ten successive summers. — 5. I have lived within the last twenty years at Rome, Tarentum, Athens, Gabii, Carthage, [and] Sardis. — 6. Numa dwelt at Cures; but he afterwards reigned forty years in Rome. — 7. The soldiers made-a-halt at Alba, a fortified town.[b] — 8. Cneius Pompey [when] a young-man had won the greatest glory at-home and in-the-service. — 9. That day was the 26th of March.[c] — 10. Marcus Regulus was sent from Carthage to Rome [to treat] of peace.

proximus *moveo*[2] *tōtus* *aestās* *sum* *tōtus* *saepenumerō* *circumsedeo*[2] *continuus* *hic proximus annus* *Carthāgo* *Sardēs* (pl.) *habito*[1] *posteā* *rēgno*[1] *consisto*[3] *mūnītus* *adulescēns* *adsequor*[3] *militia* *dē*

a. Present: § 296. *a* (G. 221; H. 467. iii. 2). — *b*. Use *in*: § 184. *c* (G. 412, R.[2]; H. 423. ii. 3, 3). — *c*. See § 376. *d* (G. App.; H. 708. iii. with 2, 3).

Digitized by Google

Write in Latin.

1. In winter and summer the Arabs roam-over[a] the plains.

2. At the beginning of summer[b] the consul passed[c] into Spain.

3. Agamemnon scarcely in ten years took one city.

4. Within three days I will finish[d] the work.

5. Cæsar moves [his] camp, and in about fifteen days arrives at the bounds[e] of the Belgæ.

6. I was yesterday at Cæsar's house (*apud Caesarem*).

7. That most illustrious[f] commander had strengthened[g] the republic at home and abroad by his victories.

8. Brutus learned philosophy at Athens, eloquence in Rhodes.

9. My sisters are passing[h] their life in the country.[i]

10. I have lived in Rome, Carthage, Athens, Naples, and Corinth; and have now been[j] three years at home in Gaul.

11. Amynander sent ambassadors both to Rome to the Sénate, and to the Scipios in Asia.[k]

12. Cicero after [his] exile sailed[l] from Greece to Italy, and remained a few days at Brundisium; then, through friendly cities, returned to Rome.

Lesson 18.

Gerundive Constructions.

In the use of Gerundive Constructions, the following should be carefully distinguished: —

1. The Participial or Adjective use: § 294 (G. 243; H. 196. 4);
2. The Gerund, with Object-Accusative: § 427 (G. 427; H. 559);
3. The Gerundive in Agreement, having the force of the Gerund: § 296 (G. 428; H. 562);
4. The special uses of the four Object-Cases: §§ 298–301 (G. 429–434; H. 563–566).

---

a. peragro.[1] — *b. ineunte aestāte.* — *c. trānseo.* — *d. perficio.*[3] — *e. fīnes.* — *f. clārus.* — *g. augeo.*[2] — *h. ago.*[3] — *i.* See § 258. *d* (G. 412. R.[1]; H. 424. 2). — *j.* Present. — *k.* Accusative. — *l. navigo.*

Digitized by Google

REMARK. — In general. the gerundive construction in Latin corresponds with the participial noun in -ING. The chief difference is —

1. That for the nominative, the Infinitive must be employed in Latin: as,

Writing is useful, *scrībere est ūtile.* But —
The art of writing, *ars scrībendī.*

2. That for the phrase "WITHOUT doing anything," or the like, some other form of expression must be used: as, for example,

I went away without effecting my object, *abiī rē īnfectā.*
He came without warning, *inopīnātus vēnit.*
I did this without knowing it, *hoc īnsciēns fēcī.*

Oral Exercises.

1. They considered that two-years were enough to accom- *dūco*[3] *biennium* *ad* *cōn-*
plish these things. — 2. Thus they were better-prepared to *ficio*[3] *parātus*
undergo all dangers. — 3. Convinced by these things, Cæsar *subeo* *addūco*[3]
decided that he must not wait.[a] — 4. If anything should-happen[b] *statuo*[3] (dat.) *exspecto*[1] *quid* *accido*[3]
to the Romans, he has the strongest hope of holding the royal- *summus* *spēs* *obtineo*[2] *rēg-*
power by-means-of the Helvetii. — 5. Cæsar takes his hand, *num* *per* *prendo*[3] *dextra*
consoles [him, and] begs [him] to-make[b] an end of entreaty. *consōlor* *rogo*[1] *finis* *ōro*[1]
— 6. The Helvetii sent ambassadors for-the-sake of seeking *causa*[3] *peto*[3]
peace. — 7. Cæsar provided-for making a bridge upon the *cūro*[1] *pōns*
Arar. — 8. The prætor appointed decemvirs for marking-out the *creo*[1] *decemvir* *metior*[4]
Samnite territory. — 9. The laws of the Cretans train [their] *Sāmnes* *ager* *lēx* *Crētēs* *ērudio*[4]
youth by tasks, by hunting, running, fasting, thirst, cold, [and] *juventūs* *labor* *vēnor*[1] *curro*[3] *ēsurio*[4] *sitio*[4] *algeo*[2]
heat. — 10. Cæsar had everything to do at-once: to display *aestuo*[1] (dat.) *ago*[3] *uno tempore* *prōpōno*[3]

---

a. Impersonal passive: § 232 (G. 353; H. 388). — *b.* Present subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

the battle-flag, to signal with the trumpet, to call-back the men
vexillum *signum do*[1] *tuba* *revoco*[1] *miles*
from work, to draw-up the line, to cheer the men, [and] give
ab opus *instruo*[3] *aciēs* *cohortor*[1]
the signal.[a]

Write in Latin.

1. The consul gives heed[b] to propitiating[c] the gods.
2. All hope of taking the town was lost.
3. Cæsar perceives[d] that the war must be put-off[e] till[f] summer.
4. The consul gave Fabius one legion to lead into Spain.
5. Conon provided-for[g] the repair[h] of the walls of Athens.
6. A short time[i] of life is [long] enough to[j] live well and happily.
7. By always obeying the magistrates, the youth won[k] [themselves] good fame.
8. The grass[l] here is very convenient[m] for sleeping.
9. You have lost much time in play.

III. — Moods and Tenses.

Lesson 19.

Subjunctive: Independent Uses.

The Independent uses of the Subjunctive are the following: —

1. Of Exhortation or Command: § 266 (G. 256. 1, 2, 3; H. 488. i. ii.);
2. Of Prohibition: § 269. *a* (G. 264, 266, with 2, 264. ii.; H. 535. 1, 2), 3), 3. 1);
3. Of Wish: § 267 (G. 253, 255; H. 488. ii. with 2);
4. Of Doubt or Interrogation: § 268 (G. 251, 258; H. 486. ii.).

---

a. Use the passive construction. — *b. opera.* — *c. placo*.[1] — *d. animadverto*.[3] — *e. differo.* — *f. ad.* — *g. cūro*.[1] — *h. reficio*.[3] — *i. spatium.* — *j. ad.* — *k. adsequor*.[3] — *l. grāmen.* — *m. commodus.*

Digitized by Google

REMARK. — To these may be added the so-called Potential Subjunctive: § 311. *a* (G. 250, 252, with R.[1]; H. 485, 486. i.), though strictly belonging to the construction of Conditional Sentences.

Notice especially the use of **velim**, etc., in expressions of Wish: § 267. *c* (G. 254, R.[2]); also, the use of **nē** in prohibitions.

Oral Exercises.

1. [Granted that] this is false if-you-will; at-least it is not
(plur.) *falsus* *sānē* *certē*
harmful. — 2. I would-rather that you be good than seem [so].
molestus *mālo* *videor*[2]
— 3. This, in-truth, I may assert,[a] without any hesitation, that
vērō *cōnfirmo*[1] *ūllus* *dubitātio*
eloquence is the one thing most difficult of all. — 4. What can
you do with[b] this man? — 5. If you are[c] resolved to do [this],
certus
do [it]; but do not afterwards throw the blame on me. —
vērum *post* *cōnfero* *culpa*
6. Pardon nothing, do nothing for the sake of favor, be not
ignosco *causa* *grātia*
disturbed by pity. — 7. [Suppose] a good man to sell[d] a house
commoveo[2] *misericordia* *vēndo*[3] *aedēs*
on-account-of some faults which he-himself knows,[e] others
propter *vitium* *nosco*[3] *cēterus*
do not; [suppose] it[f] to be[d] pestilential and to be esteemed[d]
ignōro *pestilēns* *habeo*[2]
wholesome; [suppose] it is-not-known[d] that vermin[f] turn-up in
salūbris *ignōro*[1] *serpēns* *appāreo*[2]
all the bedchambers; [that it is] ill timbered [and] rickety, —
cubiculum *male māteriātus* *ruīnōsus*
but no-one knows[d] this except the master.
nēmo *scio*[4] *praeter*

Write in Latin.

1. Let the advantage[g] of the commonwealth prevail.[h]

2. Let us accordingly[i] bring-up[j] [our] child with every indulgence.

---

a. Perfect. — *b.* See § 244. *d* (G. 396. R.[1]; H. 434. 2). — *c.* "It is." — *d.* These verbs are all in the hortatory subjunctive. — *e.* Perf. subj. — *f.* Plural. — *g.* *ūtilitas.* — *h.* *valeo.*[2] — *i.* *proinde.* — *j.* *nūtrio.*[4]

Digitized by Google

3. This thou shalt do[a]: this thou shalt not do.[b]
4. Let him write to me what he has done.[b]
5. I could not easily say[b] that this is better.
6. I wish[c] [that] Athens may conquer.[c]
7. This thing may [perhaps] seem absurd[d] to you.
8. Some-one[e] may [perhaps] think that I am-wrong.[f]
9. No one can easily restrain[b] Cæsar from victory.
10. I would-rather[g] be at home than abroad.[h]
11. Suppose your friend should fall sick[i] or die, what will you do?
12. Let justice be done [though] heaven fall.

Lesson 20.

Sequence of Tenses.

NOTE. — It is to be observed (*a*) that the rule for the Sequence of Tenses applies only to the tenses of the Subjunctive in subordinate constructions; and (*b*) that the rule in Latin (with one or two qualifications) is the same as in English.

1. Learn the definitions of Primary (or Principal) and Secondary (or Historical) tenses, with the rule for the Sequence of Tenses: §§ 285, 286 (G. 216; H. 481).

2. Notice the use of secondary tenses (chiefly the Imperfect) after primary: viz., —

1. With the historical present: § 287. *e* (G. 511, R.[1]; H. 481. iv.).
2. With the perfect definite: id. *a* (G. 511. R.[2]; H. 482. 1).

Also, the application of the rule in —

3. The Imperfect of *general assertions:* id. *d.*

NOTE. — The dependent verbs in the following examples (after "so-that," "as-if," &c., are all to be in the subjunctive mood.

---

a. Fut. imperat. — *b.* Perf. subj. — *c.* Pres. subj. — *d. absurdus.* — *e. quispiam.* *f. erro*[1] (infin.). — *g. mālim.* — *h. foris.* — *i. in morbum cadere.*

Digitized by Google

Oral Exercises.

1. It-is-impossible-that[a] many should lose [their] property,
āmitto[3] *rēs*
without[b] dragging more with-them into the same disaster. —
traho[3] *calamitās*
2. The king was so cruel, that he spared not his-own son. —
adeo saevus *tempero*[1]
3. Our [men] took-by-assault [their] ships, one-by-one, so-that
expūgno[1] *singuli* *ut*
very-few out-of the whole number got[c] to land. — 4. [He
perpaucī *omnis* *pervenio*[4]
says] the Helvetii have been so trained by their ancestors, that
(acc.) *īnstituo*[3] *māiōrēs* *ut*
they are-used[c] to receive hostages, not give [them]. — 5. Cicero
cōnsuēsco[3] *accipio*[3]
says that he has withdrawn from [his] country, so-as-to avert
excēdo[3] *ex* *patria* *ut* *āverto*[3]
civil war. — 6. We seem to have advanced so-far, that we are
cīvīlis *prōficio*[3] *tantus*
not[d] surpassed by the Greeks even[d] in wealth of words. —
vinco[3] *Graecus* *cōpia* *verbum*
7. He shuns every gathering of men, just-as-if he were odious
coetus *quasi* (pres.) *invīsus*
to everybody. — 8. From his own misfortunes he learned how
omnis *īnfortūnium* *disco*[3]
uncertain is all hope of the future. — 9. He strengthens the
incertus *spēs* *rēs futūrae* *commūnio*[4]
town, so-as to deliver[e] his fellow-citizens from alarm.
ut *libero*[1] *cīvis* *trepidātio*

Write in Latin.

1. I write that I may admonish you.
2. I wrote yesterday that I might inform you.
3. He runs-away[f] as if he were[g] frightened.
4. He undertook this task as if he were a good workman.[h]
5. I will come to-morrow to-see[i] you.
6. We went out yesterday to see[i] the battle.
7. I have toiled[j] so-long[k] that I am completely tired-out.[l]

---

a. Use *nōn possunt.* — *b.* Use *ut nōn*, with pres. subj. — *c.* Perfect subj. — *d.* Use *ne . . . quidem.* — *e.* Imp.: § 287. *d.* — *f. effugio*.[3] — *g.* Present subj. — *h. faber.* — *i. ut*, with subj. — *j. labōro*.[1] — *k. tam diū.* — *l. dēfessus.*

Digitized by Google

8. Cæsar was so merciful[a] that not even [his] beaten[b] enemies[c] feared him.

9. This man is so[d] just that no one ever feared[e] to confide in him.

10. A painful experience has taught [us], how sad [a thing] is the loss of fortune.[f]

Lesson 21.

Conditional Sentences.

THE forms of Conditions, which should be carefully distinguished, are the following: —

1. Simple Conditions — any tense of the Indicative: § 306 (G. 597; H. 508);

2. Future Conditions — Future Indicative or Present Subjunctive: § 307, with *a*, *b*, and *c* (G. 597, 598; H. 508, 509);

3. Conditions Contrary to Fact — Past tenses of the Subjunctive: § 308 (G. 599; H. 510, with 1).

a. Notice carefully the precise nature of the condition to be rendered into Latin. Thus —

If he is now alive (Present), ***sī nunc vīvit.*** But —

If he is alive to-morrow (Future), ***sī crās vīvet.***

If he were here now (Present), ***sī nunc adesset.*** But —

If he were to come to-morrow (Future), ***sī crās veniat.***

b. Notice especially the use of the Present Subjunctive, corresponding to the English SHOULD and WOULD. Thus —

If you should come to-morrow you would see (Future), ***sī crās veniās, videās.*** Compare —

If you were here now you would see (Contrary to Fact), ***sī nunc adessēs vidērēs.***

c. Clauses with **quasi, tamquam,** etc. (AS IF, AS THOUGH), have their verbs in the Subjunctive: § 312, with Rem. (G. 604; H. 503. ii., 506).

---

a. clēmēns. — *b. victus.* — *c. inimīcus.* — *d. adeo.* — *e.* Perfect subj. — *f. rēs familiāris.*

Digitized by Google

d. The phrase IF . . . NOT is generally to be rendered by **nisi**; but, where the negative is thrown with emphasis on some single word, **sī . . . nōn (neque)** is to be preferred. Thus —

If I am not mistaken, *nisi fallor.*

If Brutus is not a friend but an enemy of Cæsar, *sī Brūtus nōn amīcus est, sed inimīcus Caesaris.*

Oral Exercises.

1. If [my] mind does not deceive me, misfortune will not
animus *fallo*[3] *īnfortūnium*

be-far-away. — 2. If [your] country should discourse with you,
multum abesse *patria* *loquor*[3]

ought she not to prevail, even if she could not apply force? —
dēbeo[2] *impetro*[1] *etiam* *adhibeo*[2] *vīs*

3. If I should write[a] to my brother, he would make-haste
ad *propero*[1]

at-once [for] Rome. — 4. If I had[b] a pen handy,[b] I would write
statim (acc.) *calamus*

to Marcus. — 5. If [your] parents feared and hated you, and[c]
parēns *timeo*[2] *ōdī*

you could not[c] in any way reconcile them, you would withdraw
ratio *placo*[1] *concēdo*[3]

somewhere from their sight. — 6. If my counsel and influence
aliquo *oculus* *cōnsilium* *auctōritās*

had prevailed, you would this day be-a-beggar, we should be
valeo[2] *tu* *hodiē* *egeo*[2]

free, the commonwealth would not have lost so-many generals
liber *rēs pūblica* *āmitto*[3] *tot* *dux*

and armies. — 7. The mind is pretty-much like iron: if you
exercitus[4] *mēns* *prope* *uti* *ferrum*

use [it],[d] it wears-out[e]; if you don't use it, it gathers rust. —
exerceo[2] *contero*[3] *contraho*[3] *rōbigo*

8. Then [said] I: "What!-even if he wanted you to take
tum *etiamne* *volo* *fero*

firebrands to the Capitol?" "Never," said he, "would he have
fax *in* *Capitōlium* *inquam*

wished [it]."[f] — 9. At that time you would have thought
ille *tempus* *sentiō*[4]

differently.[f] — 10. He walks as if he were lame.
aliter

---

a. Perfect: § 307. *c* (cf. G. 236. R.2). — *b. adsum.* — *c. neque.* — *d.* Subj. of *general condition:* § 309. *a* (G. 597. R.3). — *e.* Passive. — *f.* Observe the implied condition.

Digitized by Google

Write in Latin.

1. If you see your father to-morrow, what will you say?

2. If I had not known that you would come, I should have written.

3. I should not have gone[a] yesterday, if I had known.

4. If it is as you say, I was greatly mistaken.

5. I should go to-morrow if you should be ill.[b]

6. Hannibal would not have fought at[c] Zama if he could have helped[d] [it].

7. I would not have gone[a] unless Cæsar had ordered.

8. You can always do that if you try.[e]

9. If it is allowed,[f] I shall be-glad-to[g] speak.

10. If it would be allowed, I should be-glad-to[g] speak.

11. At another time I might think[h] so.

12. You speak as if you thought I was deceiving you.

13. [If he were] intending-to-return[i] home, he would not delay[j] so long in business.[k]

14. A life remote from the society of men and the protection of laws would justly[l] be reckoned[m] wild[n] and dreary.[o]

15. Without help of the Gauls, Cæsar could not have overcome[p] the Germans.

16. In extreme poverty[q] old age cannot be a light [burden].

17. Your friend spoke of the monuments and antiquities as if he had lived a year at Rome.

Lesson 22.

Time-Clauses.

THE use of the Moods in clauses of Time (*when, since, before, after*) depends on the distinction of *absolute* and *relative time* (§ 323, with Note), and may be learned from the rules given in the grammar; viz. —

---

a. proficiscor.[3] — *b. aegrōto.*[1] — *c. ad.* — *d. dēfugio.*[3] — *e. cōnor.*[1] — *f. licet* (fut.). — *g. libenter* (adv.). — *h.* Present subj. — *i.* Future participle. — *j. moror.*[1] — *k. negōtior*[1] (gerund.). — *l. rectē.* — *m.* Present subj. — *n. agrestis.* — *o. tristis.* — *p. supero.*[1] — *q. summa inopia.*

Digitized by Google

1. Use of **ubi, postquam,** etc.: § 324 (G. 563; H. 471. ii. 4);
2. Use of **cum** *temporal:* § 325 (G. 581, i. ii.; H. 518. ii. 1, 3);
3. Use of **cum** *causal:* § 326 (G. 581. iii.; H. 518. i.);
4. Use of **antequam** and **priusquam:** § 327 (G. 576, 579; H. 523. i. ii., with 2);
5. Use of **dum, dōnec, quoad:** § 328 (G. 573, 574, 575; H. 522. i. and ii., 503. i.).

To these the following may be added:—

a. If WHEN is equivalent to WHENEVER, use the Indicative: as,

When I come home, I busy myself writing letters, *cum domum vēnī, operam do epistulīs scrībendīs.*

b. If the clauses are reversed, so that the temporal clause contains the principal statement, use the Indicative: as,

I was just looking for you when our friend came up, *tē exspectābam, cum amīcus nōster advēnit.*

c. If WHEN or WHILE approaches in meaning to SINCE or THOUGH, use the Subjunctive: as,

But if you do not yet quite see, when the thing is plain by so many clear proofs and tokens (Cic.), ***quod sī nōndum satis cernitis, cum rēs ipsa tot tam clārīs argūmentīs sīgnīsque lūceat.***

Oral Exercises.

1. When fortune blows-against [us], we are distressed. — *fortūna* *reflo*[1] (perf.) *affligo*[3]
2. When Verres heard this, he called Diodōrus to him. — *ubi* *audio*[4]
3. Pompey, as-soon-as he saw his cavalry beaten, withdrew *Pompēius* *ut* *equitātus* *pello*[3] *excēdo*[3]
from the line. — 4. When this seemed too-difficult, and-no *aciēs* *postquam* *videor*[2] (compar.) *neque*
opportunity was offered for effecting [it], they went-over to *facultās* *do*[1] (imp.) *perficiō*[3] *trānseo*
Pompey. — 5. So the woman, while she wished[a] to keep-back *ita* *mulier* *dum* (pres.) *retineo*[2]
a few chattels, lost all [her] fortune. — 6. This had happened *mancipium* *perdo*[3] (plur.)
before we came-back. — 7. Whenever spring began,[b] Verre *redeo* *cum* *vēr* *coepī*

a. See § 276. *e* (G. 572; H. 467. iii. 4). — *b.* Insert "to be."

Digitized by Google

would-give himself to toil and travel. — 8. The spring was now
(imperf.) *labor* *iter* (plur.) *jam*

coming-on, when Hannibal moved from [his] winter-quarters.
adpeto[3] *moveo*[2] *hiberna* (pl.)

— 9. Sailors reckon [it] a sign of stormy-weather, when many
nauta *puto*[1] *argūmentum* *tempestās*

meteors fly-across [the sky]. — 10. Since life without friends is
stella *trānsvolo*[1]

full of treachery and fear, reason itself warns [us] to provide[a]
īnsidiae *metus*[4] *ratio* *moneo*[2] *paro*[1]

friendships. — 11. While in many respects men are weaker than
cum *rēs* *īnfirmus*

brutes, in this thing they chiefly excel [them], that they can
bestia *maximē* *praesto*[1] *quod*

talk. — 12. When Epaminondas had beaten the Lacedæmonians
loquor[3] *cum* *vinco*[3] *-ius*

at Mantinēa, and saw that he was getting-exhausted by a severe
apud *atque* *exanimo*[1] *gravis*

wound, he asked whether [his] shield was safe.
vulnus[3] *-ne* *clipeus* (subj.) *salvus*

Write in Latin.

1. When you come (fut. perf.), I shall go away.[b]

2. I was-asleep[c] when the doctor came.

3. I had scarcely[d] read your letter, when Lentulus approached.[e]

4. When he had said this, he went away.

5. This he had said, when news-was-brought[f] that the enemy were in sight.[g]

6. When summer had begun,[h] he used-to-make his quarters[i] at Syracuse.

7. Before I reached home, my father had already gone.[j]

8. While he was speaking thus, his father arrived.[k]

9. When I come home at night,[l] I take-comfort[m] in-doing[n] nothing.

10. As soon as he saw his father coming, he ran-away.[o]

11. Since the time is-near,[p] it becomes us all to be ready.

---

a. Inf. or (better) *ut* with subj. — *b. abeo.* — *c. dormio.*[4] — *d. vix.* — *e. appropinquo.*[1] — *f. nūntio*[1] (impers.). — *g. cōnspectus.*[4] — *h.* Add "to be." — *i. stativa* (pl.). — *j. proficiscor.*[3] — *k. venio.*[4] — *l. vesperī.* — *m. mē dēlector.* — *n.* Gerund. — *o. effugio.*[3] — *p. adsum.*

Digitized by Google

12. While I do not believe him to be a traitor, yet I distrust him.

13. Will you not believe, when the thing is so plain?[a]

14. I congratulate[b] you that[c] you have recovered[d] your property[e] at-last.[f]

15. You will not[g] hear till I have been gone ten days.

Lesson 23.

Purpose and Result.

CLAUSES of Purpose (Final Clauses) and of Result (Consecutive Clauses) require the Subjunctive, as follows: —

1. PURPOSE, with Relative, **ut (nē)**: § 317 (G. 544. i., 545. 1, 3; H. 491, 500);

2. RESULT, with **ut (ut nōn)**: § 319 (G. 553, 554; H. 494, 500).

a. Observe the special use of **quō** (for **ut**) after Comparatives: § 317. *b* (G. 545. 2; H. 497); of **quōminus** after words of Hindering: § 319. *c* (G. 549; H. 499); and of **quīn** after *negative* expressions of Doubt or Hindrance: § 319. *d* (G. 551; H. 498, with 3). Also, the distinction to be observed in the use of the several expressions of Purpose: § 318. *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*.

b. In Latin, the constructions of Purpose and Result are precisely alike in the *affirmative*, but in the *negative* the former takes **nē** and the latter **ut nōn**. Thus —

1. **He was guarded so that he might not escape, *custōdītus est nē effugeret.***

2. **He was guarded so that he did not escape, *custōdītus est ut nōn effugeret.***

Oral Exercises.

1. The Helvētiī sent ambassadors to Cæsar to ask-for peace.
lēgātus *quī* *petō*[3]

— 2. There are many who rob from some to lavish on-others.
ēripiō[3] (dat.) *quod largior*[4] (dat.)

---

a. manifestus. — *b. grātulor*[1] (dat.). — *c. quod* (followed by indic.). — *d. recipio.*[3] — *e. rēs.* — *f. tandem* (before the verb). — *g. nōn ante . . . quam.*

Digitized by Google

— 3. Arria gave [her] husband a sword to kill himself with. —
maritus *gladius* *interficio*[3]

4. I do not doubt that[a] you are-glad of this news. — 5. Cæsar
dubito[1] *gaudeo*[2] *nūntius* (abl.)

found-out that it was Afrānius's fault[b] that[c] he did not[c] fight.[d]
cōgnōsco[3]

— 6. I write[e] you this for-the-very-reason that you may not
ideō

suppose[f] I have forgotten your message. — 7. So-great is the
puto[1] *obliviscor*[3] *mandātum* (pl.) *tantus*

power of integrity, that we love it even in an enemy. — 8. You
vīs *probitās* *diligo*[3] *etiam*

were so far off that I could not hear.

Write in Latin.

1. Æneas, that he might win[g] the hearts of the Aborigines, called both the nations Latins.

2. Romulus, lest the greatness of the city should be void,[h] opened a certain place [as] an asylum.

3. The Clusians sent ambassadors to Rome, to ask aid from the Senate.

4. I sent [a man] to Antony, to[i] tell [him] this.

5. A pen[j] was given me to write with.[k]

6. He lived honorably, that[l] he might quit[m] life with a more calm mind.

7. Again and again I beg you to do it.

8. Thrice I have begged you to come as-soon-as-possible.[n]

9. What prevents you from coming at-once?[o]

10. I shall not prevent your returning home to-morrow.

---

a. Use *quīn*. — *b. per A. stāre*. — *c. quōminus*. — *d.* Passive impersonal. — *e.* Epistolary imperfect: § 282 (G. 244; H. 472. 1). — *f.* Imp. subj. — *g. sibi conciliāre*. — *h. vānus*. — *i. quī*. — *j. calamus*. — *k. quō scrīberem*. — *l. quō*. — *m. excēdo*,[3] *e*. — *n. quam primum*. — *o. statim*.

Digitized by Google

PART SECOND.

I. — Substantive Clauses.

(*Indirect Discourse.*)

Lesson 24.

Accusative and Infinitive: — 1.

1. Learn the rule for the use of the Infinitive with Subject-Accusative: § 272 (G. 527; H. 551. 1).

a. This form is to be employed in Latin in cases where *a simple statement of fact* is introduced in English by THAT, following a verb of *saying*, &c. Thus —

He says that the mountain is held by the enemy, *dīcit montem ab hostibus tenērī.*

Here the actual words of the speaker were: **mōns ab hostibus tenētur**, *the mountain is held by the enemy.* In indirect discourse the subject **mōns** becomes accusative, **montem**, and the verb **tenētur** is put in the infinitive, **tenērī**.

b. In these cases, the infinitive, with subject-accusative, is the Object of the verb, and is called a Substantive Clause: §§ 329, 330[1] (G. 523. R.[1], 527; H. 550, 551. 1). For example —

He says [that] **he knows** [that] **those things are true, *dīcit scīre sē illa esse vēra.***

Here the object of **dīcit** is the clause **scīre . . . vēra**; the object of **scīre** is **illa . . . vēra**. Standing by itself, it would be: **illa sunt vēra**, *those things are true;* and in making this the object of **scit**, *he knows*, the nominative **illa** becomes accusative, and the verb **sunt** becomes the infinitive **esse**. But again, **scit illa esse vēra** is made the object of **dīcit**, when **scit** becomes **scīre**, and its subject is put in the accusative.

Note. — In clauses of this kind, the word *that* is often omitted in English, as in the above examples.

Digitized by Google

c. If the subject of **scit** is the same as the subject of **dīcit,** — that is, if the speaker says that *he himself* knows, — the reflexive pronoun must be used, because this refers to the subject of the principal verb; so we have **dīcit sē scīre,** etc., *he says that he* himself *knows.* But if the speaker is talking about somebody else, the accusative of **is, ille,** or **hic** must be used. Thus, **dīcit eum scīre** would mean, *he* (Marcus) *says that he* (Caius) *knows.* So **dīco mē scīre,** *I say that I know,* &c. The sentence here analyzed illustrates the common case of one accusative with the infinitive depending upon another.

d. Some verbs require the reflexive in Latin which do not in English; thus, **simulat sē esse bonum,** *he pretends to be good.* So sometimes verbs of desiring; as, **cupio mē esse clēmentem,** *I desire to be merciful.*

2. For the use of Tenses in Indirect Discourse, learn § 288 (G. 530; H. 541–543). Thus —

1. For incomplete, indefinite, or contemporary action:

He says that he knows, NOW, ***dīcit sē scīre;*** but
He said that he knew, THEN, ***dīxit sē scīre;*** and
He used to say that he knew, ***dīcēbat sē scīre;*** or,
He was saying, &c., when something else occurred.
He says that he is laughing, NOW, ***dīcit sē rīdēre;***
He said that he was laughing, THEN, ***dīxit sē rīdēre.***

NOTE. — The defective verb **inquam** is regularly used, *parenthetically,* with direct quotations. All other verbs of *saying,* &c., — as **dīco, nego, rēspondeo,** — are in general followed by Indirect Discourse.

2. For complete action:

He says that he HAS **laughed** (but has ceased), ***dīcit sē rīsisse;***
He said that he HAD **laughed** (but had ceased), ***dīxit sē rīsisse.***

3. For future action:

He says that he WILL **come,** ***dīcit sē ventūrum*** [esse];
He said that he WOULD **come,** ***dīxit sē ventūrum.***

Digitized by Google

Translate into Latin.

1. We know that Cæsar will be absent.
2. You think that he was your enemy.
3. He says that he is well.
4. He supposed that Marcus would not come.
5. I saw that the army was approaching.
6. They thought we should be[a] absent.
7. I feel that I have been merciful.
8. Cæsar understood that I had been his friend.
9. I pretended to be mad.
10. He pretends to be your friend.
11. We are mindful that we are mortal.
12. There was a rumor[b] that Cæsar was dead.

Lesson 25.

Accusative and Infinitive: — 2.

THE General Rules for the use of Tenses in Indirect Discourse have been given in the preceding lesson; but certain verbs require special attention.

a. After verbs of *hoping*, *promising*, and *undertaking*, the Future Infinitive should be used only when the action is future relatively to the predicate. Thus —

I hope that you will come, ***spēro tē ventūrum esse;*** but,
I hope that you are well, ***spēro tē valēre.***

REMARK. — Notice that when the person performing the action is the same as the person hoping, &c., the reflexive pronoun must be used. Thus —

I promise to come, ***polliceor mē ventūrum*** [esse];
You promise to come, ***pollicēris tē ventūrum;***
He promises to come, ***pollicētur sē ventūrum.***

---

a. *Should* in this sentence represents *shall* of the actual thought, becoming past after the past tense *thought*. The original expression would be "we shall be absent." Use the future infinitive. — *b.* The infinitive clause, in this case, is sometimes called the object of the verbal phrase *rūmor erat;* but is, more strictly, the predicate after *erat:* see § 272. Rem.

Digitized by Google

b. On the other hand, **meminī** and similar verbs use the present infinitive for a past action, when it is an action actually witnessed by the person speaking. Thus —

I remember that Cæsar was present (I myself having witnessed it), ***meminī Caesarem adesse;*** but,

I remember that Cæsar conquered Gaul (having learned the fact from others), ***meminī Caesarem Galliam vīcisse.***

Oral Exercises.

1. I hope that Cæsar will come. — 2. I hope to come. — 3. He promised that I should have a province. — 4. He promised to give me a province. — 5. He said that Marcus was-absent.[a] — 6. He said that Marcus had been absent. — 7. He hopes to meet[b] us. — 8. He thinks that we shall meet Cato. — 9. He promised that we should meet Cato. — 10. They declared that we had-been-neglected.[c] — 11. I think that she has been neglected. — 12. I thought that she was neglected. — 13. I remember that you were-present.[d]

Translate into Latin.

1. I hope that King Deiotarus will send ambassadors to us.
2. We hope that you are no-longer distressed in mind.
3. He promises speedily to come with all his[e] forces to our camp.
4. Sextus Roscius demanded two of [his] father's slaves for (*ad*) torture: don't[f] you remember that Titus Roscius refused?
5. You remember that I so laid-out the case in the beginning.
6. Who promised that we should see the ocean to-day?
7. He thinks that you have not-yet written the letter.
8. He thinks that you have not-yet written-out the oration.
9. The consul supposed that the enemy had already crossed the river; the enemy waited, hoping that the consul would lead his forces across.

---

a. absum. — *b. conveni̇o.*[4] — *c. neglego.*[3] — *d. adsum.* — *e.* The possessive is not to be expressed unless for emphasis or to avoid ambiguity; but *suōs*, etc., may mean "his forces." — *f. -ne:* § 210. *d* (H. 346. ii. 1, 1)).

Digitized by Google

10. I hope that you will be even firmer.

11. What did you suppose that those[a] said who saw[b] [this]? what [did you suppose] that those thought who heard[b] it?

12. The Carnutes declare that they shrink from no peril, and the chiefs promise to make war.

Lesson 26.

Accusative and Infinitive: — 3.

In the following points the Latin usage differs from the English: —

a. The word which governs the Accusative with the Infinitive is sometimes omitted, being implied in a preceding expression: § 330. *e* (G. 652. N.[2]; H. 530. i. 1): as,

The Æduans send deputies to Cæsar to ask for help, [saying] **that they had deserved so well,** &c., ***Aeduī lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, rogātum auxilium; ita sē meruisse,*** etc.

b. When the statement is in the form of a denial of the fact contained in the object-clause, **nego** is commonly used instead of **dīco . . . nōn.** Thus —

I am well, ***valeō;*** **He says that he is well,** ***ait sē valēre.***

I am not well, ***nōn valeo;*** **He says that he is not well,** ***negat sē valēre*** (instead of ***ait sē nōn valēre,*** which would be grammatically correct).

c. A Relative or other subordinate Clause in indirect discourse (except where merely explanatory) has its verb in the Subjunctive: § 336 (G. 653; H. 531). Thus —

He said [that] **these were** [the men] **whom he had seen,** ***dīxit hōs esse quōs vīdisset.***

Oral Exercises.

1. I am very much offended. — 2. I said that I was not offended. — 3. He did not say that he was a Roman citizen. —

---

a. is, the proper pronoun to use as antecedent to a relative. — *b.* Subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

4. I said that he was not a Roman citizen. — 5. They said that they should not follow. — 6. He says this is the dog he bought yesterday.

emo[3] *heri* **Translate into Latin.**

1. He says that you cannot write to me.
2. He says that you could not (*were not able to*) write to me.
3. He said that you could not (at that time) write to me.
4. He said that you could not have written to me.[a]
5. They rejoice at having learned[b] (that *they themselves have learned*).
6. King Deiotarus sent ambassadors to me, [saying] that he would come with all his forces into my camp.
7. I hear that you are distressed in mind, and that the physician says you suffer from[c] this.
8. He said that the city which he had visited was not sufficiently fortified.
9. He did not say that the city was sufficiently fortified.
10. They hope soon to finish the work they began[d] yesterday.
11. Who can deny[e] that all these [things] which we see (indic.) are ruled by the power of the gods?
12. He despairs[f] [he says] not only of (*dē*) royal-power, but even of that power which he has (subj.).

Lesson 27.

Special Constructions.

BESIDES the simple narrative of Indirect Discourse, several Special Constructions require to be noticed. These are —

1. Questions: § 338 (G. 654. R.; H. 530. ii. 2);
2. Commands: § 339 (G. 655; H. 529);
3. Conditions: § 337 (G. 659. 1, 2; H. 532. 2, 3, 4).

---

a. Could not have written = were not able to write; therefore use perf. infin. of *possum*, with pres. infin. of *scribo*. — *b.* See § 333. *b* (G. 533; H. 551. iii.). — *c. ex.* — *d. incipio.*[3] If the indicative is used here, it will mean, the work which (as we know) *they actually began;* if the subjunctive, that which (as they say) they began. — *e.* Pres. subj. — *f.* Indirect discourse.

Digitized by Google

a. Questions are sometimes in the accusative and infinitive, — especially the accusative of the Future Participle, **esse** being understood. Thus —

Who (said they) **will dare to succeed Alexander?** ***quem ausūrum Alexandrō succēdere?***

b. The phrase *would have been*, or the like, is to be expressed in indirect discourse by the Future Participle with **fuisse**. Thus —

I should have come if I had been well, ***vēnissem*** **(=** ***ventūrus eram*****)** ***sī valuissem.***

He wrote that he would have come if he had not been sick, ***scrīpsit sē ventūrum fuisse, nisi aegrōtāsset.***

NOTE. — In the exercises below, the Question or Command is generally given in the *direct* form. The student should, accordingly, change the form to that of indirect discourse, putting all the verbs in the third person, and assuming a verb of *saying* or *asking* in the past tense. It may be well to write the sentences first in the direct form, comparing those given under § 339 (G. 664). If they should prove too difficult, they may be left till the review.

Write in Latin.

1. Ariovistus, when I[a] was consul, sought most eagerly the friendship of the Roman people: why does any-one so hastily suppose that he will withdraw from [his] duty? I for-my-part[b] am persuaded[c] that he will cast-off neither my good-will nor [that] of the Roman people.

2. But if, driven by rage and madness, he should bring[d] war, pray what are you afraid-of[e]?

3. If any are troubled by[f] the defeat[g] and flight of the Gauls, they, if they ask, can find, that while[h] the Gauls were worn-out by the length of the war, Ariovistus, having kept[i] himself for many months in camp and in swamp, and having given no chance at him,[j] attacked[k] [them] suddenly, hopeless [as they were] of battle and dispersed, [and] conquered [them] more by skill[l] and strategy[l] than by valor.

---

a. Abl. abs. with *sē*. — *b. quidem*. — *c.* Impersonal with Dative. — *d. infero* (pluperfect). — *e. vereor*.[2] — *f.* Use the active construction. — *g. adversum proelium* (nom.). — *h.* Ablative absolute. — *i.* Clause with *cum*. — *j. sui potestātem facere*. — *k. adorior*[4] (participial construction). — *l. ratio, cōnsilium*.

Digitized by Google

4. But if, besides, no one shall follow, still I will go with the tenth legion alone, about which I have no misgiving, and this shall be my (dat.) body-guard.[a]

5. If you persist in pursuing (inf.) [us] with war, remember the old disaster of the Roman people, and the ancient valor of the Helvetians. Do not allow[b] that place where we have stood[c] to take [its] name from the calamity of the Roman people and the slaughter of [their] army.

6. Who [said they] will give the signal in-our-retreat[d]? who will dare to succeed Alexander? Suppose[e] we penetrate as-far-as (*ad*) the Hellespont in [our] flight, who will prepare a fleet in which we may cross-over?

Anecdotes.

1. The mother[f] of Phalaris — writes Ponticus Heraclides, a learned man, a hearer and disciple of Plato — appeared to see in [her] sleep (plur.) the images of the gods, which she had consecrated in-her-house; of (*ex*) these Mercury seemed from a bowl which he held in his right hand to pour blood, which, when it reached[g] the ground seemed to boil-up,[h] so that the whole house overflowed with blood. This[i] dream of the mother was made-good[j] by the monstrous cruelty of [her] son.

2. Publius Scipio,[f] the same who was first called Africanus, used to say — [as] Cato has written, who was nearly of-his-time[k] — that he was never less idle[l] than when at-leisure,[l] and-never[m] less alone than when he was alone.

Lesson 28.

Indirect Questions.

NOTE. — For the forms of interrogation in Simple Sentences, see *Lesson* 3.

1. An interrogative expression may be incorporated in the main sentence as the subject or object of a verb,

---

a. praetōria cohors. — *b. committere ut.* — *c. cōnsisto.*[3] — *d. fugientibus.* — *e. ut.* — *f.* Indirect discourse depending on *scrībere.* — *g. attingo*[3] (plup.). — *h. refervēsco.*[3] — *i.* Relative. — *j. comprobo*[1]: use the active construction. — *k. aequālis*, with genitive. — *l. ōtiōsus.* — *m. nec.*

Digitized by Google

thus becoming a substantive clause. In this case it is called an Indirect Question, and its verb is in the subjunctive: § 334 (G. 469; H. 525). Thus —

I see who has the book, *video quis librum habeat.*

NOTE. — Here the form of direct question would be, *quis librum habet?* Other examples are —

quantum habēs? — dīc mihi quantum habeās.
unde venīs? — nescio unde veniās.
num Rōmānus es? — rogo num Rōmānus sīs.
nōnne hōc vidēs? — quaerit nōnne hōc videās.

a. In indirect questions **num** has the same force as **-ne.**

b. The interrogative expression may be made the subject of the verb: as, **nōn cōnstat quis habeat Etrūriam,** *it is not known who has Etruria*, where the clause **quis . . . Etrūriam** is subject of **cōnstat.**

2. Alternative questions, like simple ones, can be made the subject or object of a verb, and in this case take the subjunctive as Indirect Questions: thus —

I do not know whether it was Cæsar or Pompey, *nescio utrum Caesar fuerit an Pompēius.*

It is not clear whether we have peace or war, *bellum pācemne habeāmus nōn cōnstat.*

Oral Exercises.

1. Who will[a] go with me[b]? — 2. What[c] soldier will go with us? — 3. Will any one[d] follow Cæsar? — 4. He does not say who will go with you. — 5. I do not know whether any one will go with us. — 6. I asked whether you had seen Marcus. — 7. I wished to know whether you were absent. — 8. Will you[e] come, or I? — 9. Do you give us peace or war? — 10. Is Cæsar to be king or not? — 11. I do not know whether Cæsar is to be king

a. = wishes to go. — *b. mēcum*: § 99. *e* (G. 414. R.[1]; H. 184. 2). — *c.* § 104. *a* (H. 188. 1; G. 104, first two lines). — *d. num quis* or *ecquis*. — *e.* "You" must be expressed, as it is contrasted with "I."

Digitized by Google

or emperor. — 12. He did not say whether he was Nero or not. — 13. When did you come? — 14. I ask you when you came. — 15. I asked you when you came.

Translate into Latin.

1. What was the cause of hatred?
2. I do not know what cause of hatred there was.
3. I do not know whether there was a cause of hatred.
4. How[a] do these matters stand?
5. How these matters stand, I dare not[b] relate, even[b] in a letter.
6. Fearing to inquire which [of the two] was[c] Porsena, he kills the secretary instead-of the king.
7. I do not see what can be more suited to a good man than to stand aside from civil disputes.
8. I am uncertain whether I am more pushed by the sword or by famine.
9. Often it is asked, not whether a thing is [true] or not, but of-what-sort it is.
10. It is asked earnestly whether it was done or not.
11. Did the Picene land follow the mad-counsels of-the-tribunes,[d] or the authority of the consuls?
12. Did [then] conscience, as (*id quod*) is wont to happen, make you timid and suspicious?
13. Doubt now, judges, if you can, by whom Sextus Roscius was killed; by him who, on account of his death, lives in poverty and in [the midst of] plots, or by those who avoid investigation, [and] possess [his] property (*bona*).

Lesson 29.

Other Forms of Substantive Clause.

1. For the classification of Substantive Clauses, see § 329, Note (H. 554, comparing G. 507).

---

a. quōmodo. — *b. ne . . . quidem.* — *c.* § 287. *e* (G. 511. R.[1]; H. 481. iv.). — *d. tribūnicius:* § 190 (G. 360. R.[1]; H. 398. 2).

Digitized by Google

Besides Infinitive Clauses (with or without subject-accusative), are the following: —

A. — Subjunctive Clauses with **ut**.

Note. — These differ from simple dependent clauses of Purpose or Result (see *Lesson* 23) in being the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 331, 332 (G. 544. i. ii., 546, 555. 2, 3, 4, 557, 558, 559; H. 554, iii., 492, 495).

2. Subjunctive Clauses are either —

a. Clauses of Purpose, with **ut** or **nē**: as,

I ask you to come, *rogo ut veniās.*

Here the clause **ut veniās** is the object of **rogo**. Negatively, it would be

I ask you not to come, *rogo nē veniās.*

Remark. — Notice the special use of **ut** and **nē** with verbs of Fearing: § 331. *f* (G. 552[5]; H. 492. 4, 1), 2)). Thus —

I fear he will come, *vereor nē veniat.*

I fear he will not come, *vereor ut veniat.*

b. Clauses of Result, with **ut** or **ut nōn**: as,

I cause you to come, *efficio ut veniās.*

It happened that you had not come, *ēvēnit ut nōn vēnissēs.*

Note. — It is not obvious, at first sight, that this last sentence differs in kind from *He said that you had not come*, which requires the Accusative and Infinitive of indirect discourse. The student will do well to study carefully and compare the lists of verbs or verbal phrases given at the foot of pages 239, 241, 242 of the Grammar (A. & G.). For the Sequence of Tenses in these and other dependent constructions, see *Lesson* 20.

B. — Indicative Clauses with **quod**.

3. The Indicative Clause with *quod* is used —

a. When a statement of fact is made for explanation or specification: § 333, with *a* (G. 525, with R.[2]; H. 554. iv.). Thus —

Digitized by Google

It is unlucky that he returned, ***quod rediit īnfaustum est.***

As to your saying this (*i.e.*, as to the fact that you said it), &c., ***quod hōc dīxistī.***

b. When the clause is the object of a verb of Feeling: § 333. *b* (G. 542 and 533; H. 558. v. 1, 2). Thus —

I am glad that you have come, ***gaudeo quod vēnistī.***

NOTE. — Here the accusative and infinitive may also be used: as, **gaudeo tē vēnisse.**

Oral Exercises.

1. I cause the Romans to fight (= *that the Romans fight*). — 2. I will cause the Romans to fight. — 3. I caused the Romans to fight. — 4. I have caused the Romans to fight. — 5. I had caused the Romans to fight. — 6. We will bring [it] to pass that he depart. — 7. He grieves because you are not well. — 8. I wished to come. — 9. They cried out that they were ready.[a] — 10. They cried out that he should lead them against the enemy.[b] — 11. I entreated him to spare me.

Translate into Latin.

1. They caused the departure to seem (*caused that the departure seemed*) just-like a flight.

2. I wish,[c] fathers, to cross the Tiber, and enter the camp of the enemy.

3. What more befits a good and peaceful man, and a good citizen, than[d] to stand aside[e] from civil disputes?

4. I for-my-part will not make-the-mistake[f] of giving (*that I give to*) you some ground of refusing.

5. The senate decreed[g] that the consuls should inquire into[h] this affair.

6. I am glad that I have interrupted you.

---

a. Statement of a fact. — *b*. Something to be done. — *c*. § 331. *b* (G. 532. R.[3]; H. 552. 1). — *d*. § 332. *b* (H. 496. 2). — *e*. Either infinitive or *ut* with the subjunctive. — *f*. § 332. *e*. — *g*. § 332. *h* (G. 546; H. 558. ii. 2). — *h*. *dē*.

Digitized by Google

7. He commands the Ubians to lead away[a] [their] flocks, and convey all their[b] [possessions] from the fields into the towns.

8. He promises to write to me.

Lesson 30.

Impersonal Verbs.

IMPERSONAL VERBS may be divided, in respect to their construction, into two principal classes: —

a. Those purely impersonal, which have no subject at all. These are —

1. Those which express operations of nature: as, **grandinat,** *it hails;* **pluit,** *it rains.*

2. The passive of intransitive verbs: as,

There is sinning, ***peccātur;***
Fighting was going on, ***pūgnābātur;***
There is need of striving, ***nītendum est.***

REMARK. — When an impersonal verb of this class is put into the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, it remains with no subject: as,

It snows, ***ningit;*** **I see that it is snowing,** ***video ningere.***
We must fight, ***pūgnandum est;*** **It is clear that we must fight,** ***cōnstat pūgnandum esse.***

b. Those which have a substantive clause as subject: viz., either an infinitive clause, a subjunctive clause, or the clause with **quod.**

1. Those which have a simple infinitive as subject are generally followed by the dative: as,

I like to joke, ***libet mihi jocārī.***

To this class belong **licet,** *it is permitted;* **libet,** *it is pleasing;* **placet,** *it is thought best;* **necesse est,** *it is necessary;* and **certum est,** *it is determined.*

---

a. § 331. *a* (H. 558. vi.; G. 546). — *b*. § 197. *d* (H. 441; G. 195. 2).

Digitized by Google

2. **Oportet,** *it behooves*; **cōnstat,** *it is well agreed*; and occasionally those given above (**libet**, etc.), take the accusative with the infinitive: as,

It was necessary that there should be some head, ***esse aliquod caput oportēbat.***

Here **esse . . . caput** is subject of **oportēbat.**

3. Those which have a subjunctive clause as subject (see *Lesson* 26). To this class belong **accidit** and **contingit,** *it happens*; **sequitur,** *it follows*; **restat** and **reliquum est,** *it remains*; **fit,** *it happens*; **futūrum est,** *it is going to happen*; **mōs est,** *it is customary*; &c.

4. Those which take the clause with **quod** (see *Lesson* 26).

c. The passive of verbs of Saying, &c., may be used either personally or impersonally.

Thus, we may say either **Crassus dīcitur abesse,** *Crassus is said to be absent*, or (less commonly) **dīcitur Crassum abesse,** *it is said that Crassus is absent*, where **Crassum abesse** is subject of **dīcitur**: § 330. *a*, *b* (G. 528; H. 549. 4 with 1).

NOTE. — With impersonal verbs, the word IT is used in English, but is not to be rendered into Latin. For special constructions, see §§ 221. *b*, *c*, 222, 227. *e*, 237. *e* (G. 376, 381, 382. 2; H. 410. iii. 6, 408. 1 and 2).

Oral Exercises.

1. You may (it is permitted to you to) set out. — 2. May I go with you? — 3. He might have done this (it was permitted to him to do this). — 4. It will please us to call-upon you. — 5. Cæsar ought (it behooves Cæsar) to be angry. — 6. I ought not to have been angry. — 7. It does not become you to lie. — 8. It is raining. — 9. You see that it is raining. — 10. It is well agreed that Romulus founded Rome. — 11. It happened that Cæsar was present. — 12. I (dat.) am determined to advance. — 13. The consul thought best (it pleased the consul) to convene the senate. — 14. You have leave (it is permitted) to depart. — 15. It follows that you have leave to depart. — 16. We ought to rejoice. — 17. He said that I ought not to delay. — 18. It was said that Cæsar had been defeated.

Digitized by Google

Translate into Latin.

1. It was necessary[a] for me to set out for the province with military-power.

2. It happened, contrary to my will and beyond [my] expectation, that it was necessary for me to go into the province with military-power.

3. It has rained stones (abl.) on the Alban Mount.

4. It was announced to king and senate[b] that it had rained stones on the Alban Mount.

5. It is proper to write-out one speech out of so many.

6. I have judged it proper (that it is proper) to write out one speech out of so many.

7. Which-of-the-two killed Sextus Roscius?

8. It remains, that we are in doubt [as to] this, which of the two killed Sextus Roscius.

9. People run (there-is-running) from all parts[c] of the city into the forum.

10. He said that it had never pleased him[d] that Avaricum was defended.

11. It follows that you do not know how these matters stand.

12. It is enough not to be a liar.[e]

II. — Miscellaneous Constructions.

Lesson 31.

Modifications of the Predicate.

1. An adjective agreeing with a substantive clause must be in the neuter gender: as,

It is clear to all that there are gods, *est omnibus perspicuum deōs esse.*

Here, **perspicuum** agrees with the clause **deōs esse**, with which it is connected by **est.**

---

a. necesse. — *b. patrēs.* — *c. locus.* — *d.* The reflexive pronoun, as relating to the subject of *said;* dative after *placet.* — *e.* This should properly be an accusative with the infinitive, *aliquem esse*, etc., *that one is not*, &c.; but *aliquem* is omitted.

Digitized by Google

2. A subject, whether a noun or infinitive clause, may be connected by the copula with a limiting genitive: § 214. *c* and *d* (G. 365; H. 401 and 403). Thus —

The army is of (belongs to) **the consul,** ***cōnsulis est exercitus.***

It is for the consul to defend the city, ***cōnsulis est dēfendere urbem.***

a. A genitive used in this way often stands instead of a predicate adjective in agreement with a phrase or clause. Thus —

It is wise to look before you leap, ***sapientis*** (not ***sapiēns***) ***est priusquam inruat prōspicere.***

b. A genitive of this class is a subjective (or possessive) genitive, denoting the source of the action described. In the case of personal pronouns, the genitive cannot be used in this way, because their genitives, **meī, tuī, suī, nōstrī,** and **vestrī,** are only objective. Hence,

It is for me (you, us) to defend the city, ***meum*** **(*tuum, suum, nōstrum,*** not ***meī,*** etc.) ***est dēfendere urbem.***

3. With impersonal verbs which govern the dative, an adjective with *esse* will be either in the accusative, or, by attraction, in the dative: § 272. *a* (G. 535. 2; H. 547. ii. and 1).

I am at liberty to take my ease, ***licet mihi esse ōtiōsō*** (or ***ōtiōsum***)**;** but,

I ought not to take my ease, ***nōn oportet mē esse ōtiōsum;*** or, ***nōn dēbeo esse ōtiōsus.***

NOTE. — With **licet** the dative is the usual construction; with other impersonal verbs the accusative is preferred.

Oral Exercises.

1. To err is human. — 2. It is easy to do this. — 3. Is it not shameful to lie? — 4. It is wise (for a wise man) to despise empty honors. — 5. It shows wisdom to reject folly. — 6. It is not for you to say this. — 7. It is shameful for him to do so. —

Digitized by Google

8. It is [the duty] of the consuls to defend the city. — 9. It is our [privilege] to die for (*prō*) [our] country. — 10. You have leave to be neutral. — 11. They ought to be ready. — 12. The consuls think it best to be watchful. — 13. They had made up their minds (*certum erat*) to be faithful. — 14. It becomes you to be modest. — 16. It was rash to advance so hastily.

imprūdēns *prōgrēdior*[3] *temere*

Translate into Latin.

1. It is a serious [thing] to be accused with-truth.
2. He thought it dangerous to enter within the guard.
3. It is a Roman [virtue] both to do and to suffer bravely.
4. It is wicked to deceive by falsehood; it is shameful to change [one's] opinion.
5. It is uncertain what will chance.
6. It was your [privilege] to have served in that war.
7. To manage [one's] business ill is [worthy] of a madman.
8. It seems to you a royal [act] to despise all lusts, to think (*sentīre*) freely in the senate.
9. It is for me [who am] poor to count [my] flock.
10. In so great perils, it is for you, Marcus Cato, to see what is going on.
11. Is it for an orator to wish to excite laughter?
12. We ask whether it is for an orator to wish to excite laughter.
13. This very [thing] is [the mark] of a great (*summus*) orator, to seem a great orator (acc.) to the people.
14. It was more glorious to contend with him than not to have [any] adversary at all.

Lesson 32.

Use of Tenses.

THE relations of Time are expressed with more precision by the tenses employed in Latin than by the corresponding English usage. In particular —

a. When the action of a subordinate clause is yet to come, the Future must be used in Latin, where English admits the Present: as,

We shall be healed if we wish, *sānābimur sī volēmus*.

Digitized by Google

b. When the action of the subordinate clause is complete in relation to the principal clause, the tenses of *completed action* are used in Latin where English prefers the *indefinite:* as,

It shall be done if you deserve (shall have earned it), ***sī eris meritus, fīet.***

Translate into Latin.

1. This you, Brutus, will know at once (*jam*) when you come into Gaul.

2. He will both judge what each needs, and will be able to speak in whatever manner the cause demands.

3. He will be eloquent, who is able to adapt his discourse to (that), whatever is becoming.

4. Whatever mischief,[a] crime, slaughter there shall be, this ought to belong (*proprius esse*) to the Roscii.

5. If you listen to me, you will avoid enmities, and consult for the ease of posterity.

6. I shall accomplish this more easily if you come to me in (into) Cilicia, which I think concerns both me and the republic, and especially you.

7. [Your] vices shall follow you whithersoever you go.

8. I truly will follow the old road, but if I find a nearer and more level one, this I will repair.

9. [As much] care as you bestow upon your health, so highly I shall judge that I am valued by you.

10. As quickly as I can,[b] and by as frequent letters, I will make[c] the whole plan of my days and journeys known to you.

11. The earth never refuses [our] rule, and never returns without usury what it receives.

Fable.

A fox by chance had seen a tragic mask: "Oh how great a show," said he, "has no brain!"

This is said for those to whom fortune has granted honor and glory, [but] has taken away [from them] common sense.

---

a. Partitive genitive. — *b. quam celerrimē potero.* — *c. efficere ut.*

Digitized by Google

Lesson 33.

Wishes and Commands.

THE following cases of the Subjunctive and Imperative require to be carefully observed: —

1. The hortatory and optative uses of the subjunctive in Wishes: §§ 266, 267 (G. 253–257; H. 487, 488. i. ii. with 1, 2, 3, 4), distinguishing the uses of the primary and secondary tenses.

2. The imperative in Commands: § 269 (G. 259; H. 535), noting the special uses of the Future: § 269. *d*, *e* (G. 262, 260. R.; H. 537. i. ii.);

3. The various forms of Prohibition: § 269. *a* (G. 264, 266; H. 538. 1, 2, comparing 535. 1), 2), 3)).

REMARK. — In Prohibitions, **nē** must be used instead of **nōn**; but **nihil** may be used for **nē quid**, **nūllus** for **nē ūllus**, etc.

Oral Exercises.

1. Send Marcus to me. — 2. Attend carefully. — 3. Let us go with him. — 4. Do not fear. — 5. Be sure you do not do this. — 6. May I accomplish your designs! — 7. Do not boast without reason. — 8. Come and bring your brothers with you, and be sure you do not delay. — 9. Let me know of your arrival. — 10. Do not wonder that I come unwillingly. — 11. Do not think that I come unwillingly. — 12. Be assured that we shall be faithful.

Translate into Latin.

1. Consider this, as-is-worthy your nature.

2. Even if you have not [any thing] to write (which you may write, subj.), yet write.

3. Do not say that I am obstinate.

4. Be not so unjust.

5. If you do not lie, may I perish.

6. Let the forum give way to the camp, peace to war, the pen to the sword, the shade to the sun.

7. Would that those songs were extant.

Digitized by Google

8. Do not suffer me, the grandson of Masinissa, to seek[a] aid from you in vain.

9. If you love me, if you wish to be loved by me, send letters to me.

10. Fear no army, no battle.

11. Pardon nothing; grant nothing at all to favor; be not moved by pity.

12. Do not think that there has been any thing in our state more excellent than these two [men].

13. They shall not take nor (*nēve*) give a bribe, neither (*nēve*) in seeking, nor in administering power.

14. If they cannot stand, let them fall.

15. If there is any spirit in us, let us avenge the death of those who have perished most unworthily, and kill these robbers.

16. May your judgment and [that] of the Roman people approve my desire, and the hope of the rest of [my] life!

Anecdote.

Epaminondas, the Theban, when his soldiers were saddened (abl. abs.) because[b] the wind had carried away (perf. pass. part.) from his spear an ornament hanging after-the-manner (*mōre*) of a fillet, [and] driven [it] upon the tomb of a certain Lacedæmonian, said: "Do not be alarmed, soldiers; destruction is portended to the Lacedæmonians; for [their] tombs are adorned with offerings."

Lesson 34.

Use of Participles.

1. PARTICIPLES are often used in Latin where English usage prefers a subordinate clause, or even an independent sentence.

See examples under § 292 (G. 667–673; H. 578–581).

---

a. Accusative with infinitive. — *b.* = *because the wind had driven an ornament* [which was] *carried away.*

Digitized by Google

2. Respecting the *time* of participles, the following points are to be observed: —

a. Only Deponent verbs have the perfect active participle. With other verbs, this relation is expressed either by a subordinate clause (generally with **cum** and the pluperfect subjunctive), or by the passive participle in the ablative absolute: as,

Having learned this thing through [his] **scouts,** ***hāc rē per speculātōrēs cōgnitā*** (Cæs.); or, ***cum hanc rem cōgnōvisset.***

b. The perfect participle of a few deponents is often used where we should use the present: § 290. *b* (G. 278. R.; H. 574. 1). Thus —

Fearing an ambuscade, he kept his army in camp, ***īnsidiās veritus, exercitum castrīs continuit*** (id.).

c. The future participle is often used to express intention or purpose: as, **locūtūrus,** *about* (or *intending*) *to speak.*

Oral Exercises.

N. B. In these sentences notice carefully the relation of the time of the participle to that of the verb.

1. [While] withdrawing (*cēdo*) from the [line of] battle, he crossed a small river. — 2. The consul led (*trānseo*) the army across the river in-order-to-help Syracuse. — 3. Catching-sight-of (*cōnspicor*[1]) the army of the enemy, he crossed the river in-order-to attack it. — 4. Defeating (*aggredior*[3]) the enemy with great slaughter (*clādēs*), he set out with three legions (*vinco*[3]). — 5. Encamping on the bank of the river, he waited-for (*exspecto*[1]) the rest-of the troops. — 6. Confessing (*fateor*[2]) their fault (*culpa*), they begged (*peto*[3]) indulgence (*venia*). — 7. They cast themselves (*prōjicio*) at Cæsar's feet (dat.), confessing their fault.

Translate into Latin.

1. The letters which had been given[a] made the crime manifest.

2. They beg that they be not deserted by the rest, *now that a commencement of war has been made.*[b]

a. which had been given = having-been-given. — *b.* Ablative absolute.

Digitized by Google

3. They announce to our ambassadors that they have returned *because they feared*[a] the perfidy of the Bituriges.

4. The townsmen, terrified, *seized*[b] *those* by whose means they thought the rabble had been stirred up, *and* led them to Cæsar.

5. He sent colonists to Signia and Circeii, *who should be* a defence (plur.) to the city by land and sea.

6. It was announced to Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus [while] ploughing that he had been made dictator.

7. *After recovering this town*, he trusted that he would bring the state of the Bituriges again into his power.

8. There is behind me a long line of *those who seek*[c] the same honor.

9. Are you going to take upon yourself so great labor, so great hostilities of so many men?

Anecdote.

After[d] Publius and Gnæus Scipio had been overwhelmed in Spain, with the greater part of their army, and all the nations of that province had accepted (*sequor*) the friendship of the Carthaginians, *since*[d] no one of our generals dared to proceed thither to correct matters,[e] Publius Scipio, then in[f] his twenty-fourth year, promised to go. By which spirit-of-confidence, indeed, he gave hope of safety and victory to the Roman people.

Lesson 35.

Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine.

[*Compare Lesson* 18.]

1. In the use of the Gerund and Gerundive the following points are to be observed: —

a. In transitive verbs the gerundive is generally used instead of

---

a. Of the three verbs that mean fear (*timeo, metuo*, and *vereor*), *vereor* alone, being a deponent, has a perfect active participle: use, therefore, either *veriti* or the clause *quod timērĕnt*. — *b*. The participle, agreeing with *eos*, which is the object of *led*: § 292. Rem., 2d line (G. 667. R.[1]; H. 579). — *c*. *i.e.*, of (persons) seeking. — *d*. Words put in *italics*, but not in brackets, illustrate some principle of the lesson. — *e*. Accusative of gerundive, with *ad*. — *f*. *agens*.

Digitized by Google

the gerund, except in the genitive, in which they are about equally common; as,

cōnservandae patriae (= ***cōnservandī patriam***) ***causā.***

But —

ad cōnservandam (not ***cōnservandum***) ***patriam.***

b. In changing the construction of the gerund to that of the gerundive, the CASE of the gerund and gerundive must be the same; but the gerundive *agrees*, while the gerund *governs*: § 296 (G. 428; H. 562).

c. Although the gerundive is always passive, yet, like other passives, it often corresponds to an active construction in English: as,

We should exercise the memory (literally, **the memory should be exercised**), ***exercenda est memoria.***

The soldiers had to leap down from the ships, ***mīlitibus dē nāvibus dēsiliendum*** [***erat***].

In this last sentence the gerundive is impersonal; *i.e.*, **dēsilītur,** *there is a leaping down = somebody leaps down*; **dēsiliendum erat,** *there was a necessity of leaping down.*

d. The Agent, with the gerundive, is regularly expressed by the Dative: § 232 (G. 353; H. 388).

2. For the uses of the Supine, see §§ 302, 303 (G. 436, 437 with R.[1]; H. 569, 570 with 1, 2).

Oral Exercises.

1. He is desirous of fighting. — 2. We are fond of sailing. — *cupidus* *studiōsus* *nāvigō*[1]
3. While writing. — 4. By running. — 5. Of entering the city. *inter* *curro*[3] *intro*[1]
— 6. Of entering the fields. — 7. On account of managing this *gerō*[3]
affair. — 8. We must[a] fight. — 9. Cæsar must[a] lead-forth the *rēs* *ēdūcō*[3]
army. — 10. The censors gave-a-contract for building[b] a tem- *loco*[1] *aedificō*[1]
ple. — 11. They sent ambassadors to ask [for] peace. — 12. It is difficult to say who is the bravest of us. — 13. The com- *fortis* *im-*
mander was obliged-to-follow[a] through the fields.
perātor *sequor*[3]

a. Use the gerundive, with the dative. — *b.* The gerundive agreeing with *templum*.

Digitized by Google

Translate into Latin.

1. Plans have been formed in this state, of destroying the city, slaughtering the citizens, [and] extinguishing the Roman name.

2. He dedicated places for performing the sacrifices, which[a] the pontifices call *Argei*.

3. We must contend with[b] luxury, with madness, with crime.

4. He sends his son Aruns with part of the forces to[c] besiege Aricia.

5. We must see what comes into dispute.

6. It is hard to tell in how great odium we are with[d] foreign nations.

7. It seems necessary-to-speak (that it must be spoken) concerning the choice of a commander (concerning choosing, &c.) for this war.

8. The memory must be trained by learning word-by-word as many writings as possible,[e] both our [own] and foreign.

9. I have not done this for the sake of exciting you, but of testifying my love.

10. He gave four legions to Labienus to lead (to be led) among[f] the Senones.

11. First I seek peace and indulgence from Jupiter, best [and] greatest, and the other immortal gods and goddesses, and pray from them that they suffer this day to have shone upon [us], both to[c] preserve the safety of this [man], and to establish the common welfare.

Anecdote.

While Camillus was besieging the Faliscans,[g] a schoolmaster delivered [to him] the children of the Faliscans, whom he had led forth[h] outside the walls, as if for the sake of walking, saying that the state would necessarily do [what was] commanded,[i] for [the purpose of][j] getting back those hostages. Camillus not only spurned the treachery, but also gave over to the boys

---

a. § 199 (G. 616. 3, ii.; H. 445. 4). — *b. cum.* — *c. ad* with gerund. — *d. apud.* — *e.* § 93. *b* (G. 317; H. 170. 2 (2)). — *f. in* with accusative. — *g.* Dative of *Camillus*, with present participle. — *h.* "having been led forth." — *i. the things commanded.* — *j.* Dative of gerund.

Digitized by Google

their master, [with] his hands behind his back (plur.), to drive him (gerundive) with rods to their parents, [thus] obtaining by kindness the victory which he had not desired by fraud; for the Faliscans, on account of this justice, surrendered to him of their own accord.

Lesson 36.

Use of Conjunctions.

NOTE. — For a list of the Conjunctions, with their classification and meaning, see § 155. A.–H. (G. 476, 485, 494, 500, 501; H. 310, 311); for their Syntax or special use, see §§ 156, 208, with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (G. 477–484, 486–493, 495–499, 502–504; H. 587, 588).

In the use of Conjunctions the following points are to be observed: —

a. When several words follow one another in the same construction, the conjunction (**et**) may be repeated between every two (*polysyndeton*), or may be wholly omitted (*asyndeton*). Thus —

Marcus Antonius and Quintus Cassius, tribunes of the people, ***M. Antōnius Q. Cassius tribūnī plēbis.***

Go now to Philip, Parmenio, and Attalus, ***ī nunc ad Philippum et Parmeniōnem et Attalum.***

b. Two or more Adjectives belonging to the same subject are ordinarily connected by **et**: as,

A great white horse, ***equus māgnus et albus.***

c. When a relative or conjunction precedes such a series of words, it is commonly repeated with each word (*anaphora*): as,

Because they had harassed the Ædui, the Ambarri, and the Allobroges, ***quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent.***

d. When a negative word or clause is to be connected with what goes before, it is common to join the negative with the conjunction, not with the word or clause that is connected; so that **neque** takes the place of **et nōn**, and even of **sed nōn**: as,

Unwilling and not innocent, ***invītī neque innocentēs.***

Digitized by Google

e. The phrase **neque enim** often commences a sentence: as,

For no one but traders visits these without good reason, ***neque enim temerē praeter mercātōres illō adit quisquam*** (for ***nēmo enim,*** etc.).

Oral Exercises.

1. Honor, justice, and mercy exhort us. — 2. We entreat you to spare us, our wives and children. — 3. They brought out their spears, swords, and shields. — 4. His countenance was calm, and not unfriendly. — 5. We are ready, but not impatient. — 6. He set out at once, and did not delay. — 7. We receive you gladly, for we too are not forgetful of your many great kindnesses. — 8. Our ancestors carried on wars with Antiochus, Philip, the Ætolians, and the Carthaginians. — 9. Cicero was a tall lean[a] [man], (and) of feeble[b] health; but a fluent,[c] witty,[d] and effective[e] pleader.[f]

Epistle.

Tullius to his Terentia.

If you are in good health, it is well: I am in good health. We have as yet nothing certain, either of Cæsar's arrival, or of the letters which Philotimus is said to have. If there is any thing certain, I will let you know. Be sure (*fāc*) that you take care of your health. Farewell. Aug. 11.

III. — Case-Constructions.

Note. — The more usual case-constructions have already been given in *Lessons* 7–16. Some of the more idiomatic usages, however, are here introduced for further illustration, especially with a view to the introduction of classical examples. For remarks on the use of cases, see the Note on page 145 of the Grammar (A. & G.); and for a general view of these constructions, the Synopsis on p. 254.

Lesson 37.

Apposition.

Simple Apposition is often employed in Latin to express relations which in English would require an

a. macer. — *b. tenuis* (abl.). — *c. facundus.* — *d. facētus.* — *e. efficāx.* — *f. ōrātor.*

Digitized by Google

adverbial phrase, or even a separate clause. In particular, —

a. A noun in apposition is often used to express the time of an action, or some attendant circumstance: as,

I [when] **a youth loved Quintus Maximus, an old man,** ***ego Q. Maximum senem adulescēns dīlexī.***

Cato learned Greek when he was an old man, ***Cato senex litterās Graecās didicit.***

Cæsar came to the aid of the Gauls against the Germans, ***Caesar Gallīs adjūtor vēnit adversus Germānōs.***

Cicero was banished from Rome in Pompey's second consulship, ***Pompēiō cōnsule iterum Cicero Rōmā pulsus est.***

NOTE. — The word **cōnsule** is here in predicate agreement with the name **Pompēiō** in the ablative of time or circumstance (*locative ablative*). It may be considered a case of Ablative Absolute (understanding, if we will, a participle of **esse**), and is the common way of expressing dates in Latin.

b. This form of apposition (*predicative*) must be carefully distinguished from ordinary (*attributive*) apposition: as in **Cato senex,** *the aged Cato;* **Caesar adjūtor,** *Cæsar the helper.* For special rules of agreement see §§ 184. *a, b, c;* 185 (G. 319, 324. R.[3], 334, with R.[1]; H. 362. 1, 1), 373).

Oral Exercises.

1. Cæsar entered Gaul as a conqueror. — 2. Zenobia was victorious over the Persians (gen.). — 3. I shall be created consul. — 4. The boy was called Milo. — 5. I understand that the boy was called Milo. — 6. Cicero, when consul, suppressed the conspiracy of Catiline. — 7. Cato used to tell in his old age. — 8. Fabius in his second consulship. — 9. The consuls Cicero and Antonius.

Translate into Latin.

1. Publius Africanus had been twice consul, and had destroyed the two terrors of this empire, Carthage and Numantia, when he accused Lucius Cotta.

---

a. The titles should follow the names.

Digitized by Google

2. A great part of goodness is to wish to become good.

3. Hardly any one (*nēmo ferē*) dances [when] sober, unless by chance he is crazy.

4. History, the witness of times, the light of truth, the life of memory, the mistress of life, the messenger of antiquity, — by what voice but that of the orator (what other voice unless [that] of the orator) is [she] commended to immortality?

5. He was at Athens [when] a youth; he had turned out a perfect Epicurean, — a class not at all suited to speaking.

6. Marius in his fourth consulship defeated the Cimbri and Teutones with very-great slaughter.

Lesson 38.

Uses of the Genitive.

THE following are special or idiomatic uses of the Genitive: —

1. The genitive (or ablative) of Quality, with adjectives: § 215 (G. 364; H. 396. iv. 1, 1)).

NOTE. — In this construction the genitive must be used to express *measure* or *requirement*; the ablative to express *bodily peculiarities*: § 251. *a* (G. 364. R.; H. 428. 4). Otherwise, either case may be used.

2. The genitive of Definition, equivalent to a word in apposition: § 214. *f* (G. 359; H. 396. v.).

3. The Partitive genitive, used with words of Quantity: § 216. *a*, 1, 2, 3, 4 (G. 371, with R.[2] and 4; H. 396. iii. 2, 1), 2), 3), 4)).

4. The Objective genitive, as representing various constructions in English: §§ 217, 218. *a*, *b*, *d* (G. 361. 2, 373, 374, 356. R.[1]; H. 399. 2, 1), 2); 3, 2), 3)).

REMARK. — The examples under the sections here referred to should be carefully studied and explained.

Oral Exercises.

1. Cicero was an orator of great eloquence. — 2. The ass is an animal with long ears. — 3. It is a thing requiring (of) the

Digitized by Google

greatest care. — 4. The Greeks were [men] of peculiar subtilty.[a] — 5. A wall of eighty-eight feet. — 6. A man of senatorial rank. — 7. A journey of several days. — 8. A house with thick walls. — 9. We seem to be of little spirit. — 10. A youth of great name. — 11. The city of Padua.[b] — 12. Much pleasure. — 13. Enough time. — 14. But-little[c] bravery.[d] — 15. Not enough soldiers. — 16. Some wisdom. — 17. Common to all. — 18. Envy of Cicero. — 19. Eager for glory. — 20. Skilled in law. — 21. Hatred of us.[e] — 22. An opportunity for jesting. — 23. Hatred towards Nero. — 24. Which of you[f] will come? — 25. I hear praise of you daily.

Translate into Latin.

1. King Deiotarus, a man of marked good-will and fidelity towards the Roman people, sent ambassadors to me.

2. I have written many things to Curio, a most genial man, and of the highest [sense of] duty and refinement.

3. The youth turned out [to be] of a truly royal nature.

4. Your letters *have*[g] the greatest weight in my estimation (*apud mē*).

5. He did not refuse the surname of Brutus.

6. This name of poet is sacred in your eyes (*apud vōs*), [you, who are] most cultivated men.

7. They asserted that the Germans were of immense size of body, incredible valor, and experience in arms.

8. In my affairs there is absolutely nothing new.

9. I had a night full of fear and wretchedness.

10. This whole topic seems appropriate to philosophers.

11. I will entreat you to impart[h] some of your geniality to me, too, and to Catulus.

12. Crassus, with (in) the greatest affability, had[i] also sufficient sternness.

13. Gorgias judged that this was especially peculiar to an

---

a. sollertia. — *b. Patavium.* — *c. parum.* — *d. fortitūdo.* — *e.* § 99. *c.* — *f.* § 99. *b* (G. 99. R.[1]; H. 396. iii.). — *g. are of*, etc. — *h.* § 331. *a* (G. 546 and 543. 2; H. 558. vi.). — *i.* Imperfect, to imply a permanent possession.

Digitized by Google

orator, — to be able to enhance a subject by praising [it], and again ruin [it] by disparaging.

14. I have less strength than either of you [two].

15. Begin, if you have any spirit.

16. No aid ought (*oportet*) to be brought.

17. They decided that no assistance, no aid, no help, ought to be brought by them (themselves) to men guilty of (bound by) so great a crime.

Lesson 39.

Genitive after Verbs.

THE Genitive is used as the object of the following classes of verbs: —

a. Of remembering, forgetting, and reminding; but see § 219, with Rem. (G. 375. R.[1], R.[2]; H. 406. ii.; 407. 1, 2; 410. i. 3, 1), 2)).

b. Of accusing, condemning, and acquitting, to express the charge, and sometimes the penalty: § 220, with *b* (G. 377. R.[1], R.[2]; H. 410. ii. 4, 1), 3), and 5, 1)).

c. **misereor, miseresco,** *pity*; also, the Impersonals **miseret,** *pity*; **piget,** *disgust*; **paenitet,** *repent*; **pudet,** *shame*; **taedet** or **pertaesum est,** *weary*, with the accusative of the person affected: § 221. *a* and *b* (G. 376; H. 406. i. and 410. iii.).

d. **Interest** and **rēfert,** *it concerns*, — the subject of the verb being a neuter pronoun, an infinitive clause, or the subjunctive with **ut**: § 222 (G. 381 and 382. 2; H. 406. iii. and 408. 2).

REMARK. — Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun, the possessive is used in this construction, in the ablative singular feminine: § 222. *a* (G. 381[2]; H. 408. 1, 2)): as,

How does it concern you? ***quid id rēfert tuā?***

Rēfert is rarely used in any other way.

Oral Exercises.

1. I am ashamed of my folly. — 2. They were tired of life. — 3. Do you recollect the battle of Cannae[a]? — 4. I shall not forget that man. — 5. It concerns me that you are well.[b] — 6. It

a. *Cannensis*. — *b*. Accusative with infinitive.

Digitized by Google

concerned the republic to remember this. — 7. Who accused Marcus of treason? — 8. He did not remember us. — 9. I pity your misfortunes. — 10. I am sorry that I forgot your advice. — 11. Whose interest is it that this crime be committed? — 12. We are acquitted of [the charge of] theft. — 13. Don't you remember[a] that I reminded you of that service? — 14. It is none of your business what I said to your brother.

Translate into Latin.

1. Publius Sestius, prætor elect, was convicted of bribery.

2. These benefits you have from me, whom you falsely charge with treason.

3. It concerns each province[b] to subdue Amanus.

4. Already before, I had made-up-my-mind that it seriously concerned each province to subdue Amanus.

5. I am tired of the business.

6. It is incredible how tired of the business I am.

7. I, although I am dissatisfied with myself, am yet chiefly joined in[c] comparison with him.

8. The Athenian state[d] is said to have been very wise[e] while it possessed power.[f]

9. Men pitied not more[g] the punishment than the crime.

10. It greatly concerns both of us [two], that I see you.

11. From that oration he is reminded of your crime and cruelty.

Lesson 40.

Dative with Verbs.

THE following classes of verbs are followed by the Dative of indirect object in Latin, though most of them are transitive in English: —

1. Verbs signifying to *favor, help*, &c.: § 227 (G. 345; H. 385);
2. Compounds of **ad, ante, con**, etc.: § 228 (G. 346; H. 386);
3. A few compounds, whose meaning would seem to require the ablative: § 229 (G. 344. R.[2]; H. 386. 2).

---

a. meministīne. — *b.* Of two. — *c.* Use the preposition. — *d.* Of the Athenians. — *e.* Superlative. — *f. potīrī rērum.* — *g.* The adverb *magis*.

Digitized by Google

REMARK. — Neuter verbs which govern the dative are used in the passive *impersonally* with the dative: § 230 (G. 208; H. 301. 1).

Oral Exercises.

1. I do not envy you. — 2. You are not envied by me. — 3. He spared no one. — 4. I cannot believe Cato. — 5. We will not be angry with the legion. — 6. This was-advantageous to the state. — 7. Who can resist Cæsar? — 8. Can Cæsar be resisted?[a] (no). — 9. The Romans favored Masinissa. — 10. He had snatched away power from you. — 11. The woman cursed[b] him. — 12. Those men must be pardoned.[a]

Translate into Latin.

1. He chiefly gives-attention to the cavalry.

2. Most-of the youth, but especially [those] of the nobles, were favorable to Catiline's schemes.

3. We, the Roman youth, declare this war *against* you.

4. I desire to satisfy[c] this [man].

5. That[d] military glory must be preferred to your formulas and processes.

6. You will, doubtless, place this king *above* all the kings with whom the Roman people have carried on war.

7. They placed this consolation[e] *before* themselves.

8. You will pardon my haste, and the shortness of [my] letter.

9. That [degree] of burden is placed upon us by the desires of these youths.

10. Acts-of-injustice began to be committed[f] by the chiefs upon the commonalty, who, until this day, had been courted with the greatest eagerness.

11. Tell me, Marcus Pinarius, if I speak[g] against you, are you going-to-abuse me, as you have done to the others? As you sow,[g] so shall you reap, said he.

12. Both the condition of the accuser and the power of the unfriendly shall be respected?[h]

---

a. Impersonal. — *b.* § 227. *e.*, second line. — *c.* § 227. *e.*, second line. — *d. ille.* — *e.* Genitive. — *f.* § 143. *a* (G. 424. R.[1]; H. 297. 1). — *g.* Future perfect. — *h.* Impersonal.

Digitized by Google

13. What heavier punishment can happen to a man than that his letters should not be believed?[a]

14. Violence deprives[b] young-men (dat.) [of] life.

15. This boy has just snatched away a jackknife from [his] brother.

16. A band of robbers plundered[c] this poor man of all [his] money.

Lesson 41.

Dative with Passives.

In general, verbs which govern the Dative can be used only impersonally in the Passive. The following points, however, require to be noticed:—

a. The passive is used *personally* when the verb also takes an accusative: as,

Hostages are demanded of all the states, *omnibus cīvitātibus obsidēs imperantur* (Active, *omnibus cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat.*).

b. Certain verbs govern either the dative or the accusative, and so may be used either personally or impersonally in the passive: § 227. *b*, *c* (G. 347; H. 385. 3). Thus—

He consults me, *cōnsulit mē*; I am consulted, *cōnsulor*.

He consults for me (for my interests), ***cōnsulit mihi*; my interests are consulted, *cōnsulitur mihi*.**

Oral Exercises.

1. We do not fear Catiline. — 2. We fear for the city. — 3. He consulted Caius. — 4. He consulted for [the interests of] Cæsar. — 5. We take counsel against Cato. — 6. I believe you. — 7. I trust this boy to you. — 8. Can you control the tempests? — 9. I guard-against you. — 10. I am-cautious for you. — 11. Who compares Cæsar with [*or* to] Pompey? — 12. He commanded us [to do] this. — 13. Did you threaten him with death?[d] — 14. I do not envy you your fortune. — 15. We foresaw danger. — 16. We provided for your safety. — 17. The Samnites are persuaded of this.

a. Impersonal. — *b.* *aufero.* — *c.* *adimo.*[3] — *d.* "death to him."

Digitized by Google

Translate into Latin.

1. He commands the cavalry to strike[a] as great terror as possible[b] into the enemy.

2. They entreat [him] to consult his own fortunes.

3. He could not persuade any state of the Germans.

4. Nor, nevertheless, could any state of the Germans be persuaded to cross the Rhine.[a]

5. If my authority has any (*quid*) weight with (*apud*) you, I earnestly exhort and advise you to consult for [the interests of] these provinces.

6. The interests of these provinces were consulted.

7. He compares his [own old age] to the old age of a spirited and victorious horse.

8. This one [thing] I do not know, whether to congratulate you or fear [for you].

9. It seems to you a kingly [thing] so to live that you not only serve[c] no man (*nemo*), but not even any passion; to despise all lusts; to want not gold, nor (*nōn*) silver, nor other possessions (*rēs*); to think freely in the senate, to consult rather [for] the advantage of the people, than [its] desires; to yield to no one, to resist many. If you think this to be kingly, I confess that I am a king.

10. Did not this Magnus [of] ours, who made [his] fortune equal to [*or* with] his virtue, present Theophanes the Mitylenæan with the citizenship, in an assembly of the soldiers?

11. Cæsar commanded those states which had joined his friendship [to furnish] cattle.

12. Do you think that the glory of that victory is shared[d] by you (dat.) with Marcus Crassus or Cneius (*Gnaeus*) Pompey?

Epistle.

King Alexander to Darius.

Darius, whose name you have taken, laid waste with all [kinds of] destruction the Greeks, who occupy the coast of the Hellespont, and the Ionian colonies of the Greeks. Then

---

a. *ut* with subjunctive. — *b.* *quam* with superlative. — *c.* Present subjunctive. — *d.* Perfect.

Digitized by Google

with a great army he crossed the sea, carrying war (abl. abs.) upon Macedonia and Greece. Again, Xerxes, of the same race, came to attack[a] us with troops of savage barbarians; who, defeated in a naval battle, yet left Mardonius in Greece, that even (*quoque*) in-his-absence he might lay waste cities, and burn fields. But who is ignorant that my father Philip was slain by those whom your [followers] had tempted by the hope of a great sum-of-money? Therefore, I repel, not excite, war. Nevertheless, if you come[b] [as] a suppliant, I promise that you shall receive, without price, both your mother and your wife and [your] children. I know [how] both to conquer and to consider the conquered.

Lesson 42.

Special Uses of the Dative.

THE following uses of the Dative are more or less idiomatic: —

a The dative of Service answers to a variety of constructions in English: see examples, with Note, under § 233 (G. 350; H. 390).

b. The dative with **esse** is the usual form to denote simple Possession; which is to be distinguished from the use of the genitive or possessive with **esse**, and from that of **habeo**, which means rather to *hold* or *keep:* § 231. Rem. (G. 349. R.[2]).

c. The dative of Agency is regularly used with the gerundive expressing *obligation*, and sometimes with other passives, especially the perfect participle But with the gerundive (used impersonally) of a verb governing the dative, the ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used instead of a second dative. Thus —

A boy should obey his mother, ***mātrī ā fīliō pārendum est.***

NOTE. — The dative of the person who sees or thinks is regularly used after the passive of **video** (usually to be rendered *seem*): as,

It seems (or, **seems good**) **to me,** ***mihi vidētur.***

---

a. Gerundive. — *b.* Future perfect.

Digitized by Google

Oral Exercises.

1. This must be done by Cæsar. — 2. We must go with him. — 3. I have a father. — 4. Cato had much judgment. — 5. It was a *source of* pleasure. — 6. Eloquence is a delight to me. — 7. They sent troops *as* aid. — 8. Hannibal must set out.[a] — 9. His plea was a great assistance to us. — 10. Cæsar had many legions. — 11. What has happened to Caius? — 12. What do you wish [for yourself]? — 13. The Gauls had a magistrate *whose name* was Vergobret.[b] — 14. It seemed to Hannibal that the war must be carried over into Italy. — 15. The Roman Senate was at length persuaded by Cato that Carthage must be destroyed.

Translate into Latin.

1. I have with Murena a great and long-established friendship.

2. Innocence has more peril than [it has] honor.

3. Tiberius Sempronius, whose surname was Longus,[b] fights successfully with Hanno.

4. Wealth began to be [esteemed] an honor; and glory, dominion, and power followed (sing.) it.

5. The greediness (plur.) of certain men was a hindrance to me.

6. To that brave (superl.) man, his father, he was a great aid in perils, solace in labors, [source of] congratulation in victory.

7. The Bituriges fall at the feet *of* the Gauls.

8. I grieve that[c] I am suspected of negligence *by you.*

9. I was a [cause of] safety to him.

10. I have always thought that you ought not only to be protected by me, but also honored and distinguished.

11. Two brothers, whose name was Philænus.[b]

12. How did it come into *your* mind to answer thus?

13. Now, now, says Catulus, I understand, Crassus, what you say; and by Hercules I assent. I see that you, a man very keen to learn,[d] have had enough time for ascertaining those things which you say.

---

a. Impersonal. — *b.* Attracted into the case of the relative. — *c.* Accusative with infinitive, or *quod* clause. — *d.* *ad* with accusative of gerund.

Digitized by Google

14. If the splendor of the games is a pleasure to the people, it is not to be wondered at that[a] it profited Lucius Murena with the people.

Lesson 43.

Special Uses of the Accusative.

THE use of the Passive of verbs which govern two accusatives requires to be noticed.

a. If one of the two accusatives is a predicate, as after verbs of *naming*, etc., both become nominative.

b. When one of the accusatives is a *secondary* object, as after verbs of *teaching*, &c., it remains in the accusative. Thus —

I was taking lessons in music from the master, *mūsicēn ā magistrō docēbar* (Active, *magister mūsicēn mē docēbat*).

c. The accusative of the *thing* also remains after the passive of **rogo**; but with other verbs of asking the accusative of the Thing becomes subject-nominative, while the name of the Person is put in the ablative with a preposition. Thus —

Cato was asked [his] **opinion, *Cato sententiam rogātus est.*** But —

The Romans were asked for peace, *pāx ā Rōmānīs petēbātur.*

NOTE. — For other idiomatic uses of the Accusative, see *Lessons* 8 and 14.

Oral Exercises.

1. Virtue is laughed-at by fools. — 2. He grieves[b] [at] his[c] fate. — 3. We grieve [at] his[d] fate. — 4. I asked Cato his opinion. — 5. Cato was asked his opinion. — 6. We are taught the rules of virtue. — 7. O the cares of men! — 8. He grieved much. — 9. Somewhat angry. — 10. Did he conceal[e] his crimes from you? — 11. He taught us music. — 12. Who asked you your name? — 13. I asked you what your name was. — 14. Cicero was saluted by the Senate [as] the father of [his]

a. Accusative with infinitive, or *quod* clause. — *b.* Used here transitively. — *c.* Use *suus*. — *d.* The genitive of *is*. — *e.* *cēlo* always takes the accusative of the person, but may take the ablative of the thing with *dē*.

Digitized by Google

country. — 15. Aid was earnestly besought of Cæsar by the Æduans against the Germans.

Translate into Latin.

1. I request this [of] you, that you come-to-the-relief-of this anxiety of-mine.

2. He asks them to come thence with him to Turnus.

3. The army is panic-stricken-at[a] this act.

4. I have received letters from you two or three times at-most, and those very short.

5. I am distressed that it is at all[b] pleasant to you without me.

6. O deceitful hope and frail fortune of men, and empty contentions of-ours!

7. You ask of me why I fear Catiline.

8. O excellent commander, no longer (*nec jam*) to be compared with [that] brave (superl.) man, Manius Aquilius, but, in truth, with the Paulluses, Scipios, Mariuses!

9. The shout which is raised behind the back of (dat.) those fighting has much effect in (*ad*) terrifying our men.

Fable.

A stag asked a sheep for a peck of wheat, taking a wolf as surety.[c] But she, dreading trickery [said]: "The wolf is always accustomed to snatch-up and go-off; you [are accustomed] to flee out of sight with swift course. Where shall I look for you, when the day arrives?"[d]

Lesson 44.

Special Uses of the Ablative.

[*Compare Lessons* 10. *b*; 13. *a*, *e*].

THE following are special or idiomatic uses of the Ablative: —

1. Of Comparison: § 247, with *a* (G. 399; H. 417, with 1 and 2).

a. Used here transitively. — *b*. *quicquam*. — *c*. Ablative absolute. — *d*. Future perfect.

Digitized by Google

NOTE. — Observe the special use of **plūs, amplius, minus,** without **quam**: § 247. *c* (G. 311. R.[4]; H. 417. 3); also the use of two comparatives with **quam** to compare two qualities of an object: § 192, with *a* (G. 314; H. 444. 2).

2. Of Degree of Difference: § 250 (G. 400; H. 418).
3. Of Birth or Origin: § 244. *a* (G. 395; H. 425. 1, with 3, 1)).
4. Of Price: § 252 (G. 404; H. 416); compare Genitive of Value: § 252. *a*, *b* (G. 379, 380; H. 402. iii. 2, 2), 3)).
5. Of Need, with **opus** and **ūsus**: § 243. *e* (G. 390; H. 419. v.).
6. With **dignus**, etc.: § 245. *a* (G. 373. R.[3]; H. 419. iv.).
7. With **ūtor**, etc.: § 249 (G. 405; H. 419. i.).

REMARK. — Notice especially the use of **opus** and **ūsus** with the perfect participle: as, **cautō opus est**, *there is need of caution.* Also of **opus** (indeclinable) as predicate: as,

We require a guide, *dux nōbīs opus est.*

N. B. The topics of this Lesson, with the accompanying Exercises, may be divided according to the convenience of the teacher.

Oral Exercises.

1. Bolder than a lion. — 2. Three miles nearer. — 3. More prudent than brave. — 4. Less than twenty ships. — 5. With more than two hundred soldiers. — 6. Dearer to me than to you. — 7. Much smaller. — 8. You abuse our patience. — 9. I am not worthy of your friendship. — 10. He eats pears. — 11. Cæsar needs troops. — 12. There was need of haste. — 13. We will enjoy these pleasures. — 14. He employed diligence. — 15. There was need of setting out at-once. — 16. What do I need?[a] — 17. The son of Æneas. — 18. Freed from odium. — 19. Valued at a high rate. — 20. At how much did you buy [it]? — 21. It is worth (stands) two thousand sesterces. — 22. I do not value (make) you a tuft-of-wool. — 23. Not far from the river. — 24. Descended from the Germans. — 25. A good-for-nothing beast. — 26. I bought the horses for a hundred sesterces apiece. — 27. I sold the horses dear (at a great price). — 28. I sold them for more than I bought them [at].

a. See Remark, above.

Digitized by Google

Translate into Latin.

1. Cato is dearer to me than Cæsar [is].

2. Cato is dearer to me than [to] Cæsar.

3. None (by nothing) the less he sought the consulship for (*in*) the next year.

4. In one day, more than twenty cities of the Bituriges are set-on-fire.

5. Be assured (*scīto*) that nothing is more agreeable to me than your Dolabella [is].

6. This mischief is spread more widely than is supposed (*opīniōne*).

7. You prefer glory to (*quam*) wisdom.

8. I understand that Domitius preferred to seem cruel in punishing than remiss in passing over [crimes].

9. It is a more serious thing to be stripped of fortunes than not to be advanced in dignity.

10. I understand that your favor is highly valued.

11. That is the man who has driven us exiles[a] from [our] country.

12. He abdicated the consulship, and withdrew from the state.

13. I lack all enjoyment and all letters.

14. Servius Tullius was son of a [female] slave.

15. The Samnites are said to be sprung from the Sabines.

16. He preferred that all his possessions[b] [should] be sold, and that he should be stripped of his splendid (superl.) patrimony, [rather] than that any delay should be caused to any one (*quisquam*) of his creditors.

17. The barbarians, catching-sight-of[c] the standards at a distance, desist from the siege.

18. He interdicted them (dat.) from fire and water.

19. Approach Otho, as you write: finish up that matter.

20. I have at length read the letters, worthy of Appius Claudius, full of elegance, courtesy, [and] earnestness.

---

a. Apposition. — *b.* Accusative with infinitive. — *c.* Perfect participle; as this act precedes that of the principal verb.

Digitized by Google

21. Cæsar gets-possession-of a great number of cattle and men.

22. Now there is need that you be well in mind, in order that you may (*possum*) in body.

23. What need have I of your friendship, if you do not do what I ask?

24. One of the nearest performed the same duty; a third succeeded to the second, and a fourth to the third.

25. No expression was heard from them unworthy the majesty of the Roman people.

26. They, relying upon the strength (*praesidium*) of the place, take refuge in the woods (acc.) and marshes.

27. There is need of daily practice, and from things the attention must be transferred to words.

28. I hope that that order will consider me, as-is-due (*prō*) my labors in behalf of the republic, not unworthy of honor, especially [that already] enjoyed.

Anecdote.

Titus Labienus, lieutenant of Caius Cæsar, desiring to fight against the Gauls before the arrival of the Germans, who (acc.) he knew would come to aid[a] them, pretended want-of-confidence, and, placing his camp (abl. abs.) on the other bank, proclaimed a departure for (*in*) the next day. The Gauls, believing that he was flying, began to cross the river, which was between (*medius*); [and] Labienus, leading his army round, cut him to pieces in-the-midst-of the very difficulties of crossing the river.

Epistle.

A letter was brought to me from my brother Quintus, [together] with the decree-of-the-Senate which was passed in-regard-to me. I have it in mind to wait-for the proposal of the laws, and if there shall-be-opposition, I will follow the advice of the Senate, and rather lose my life than my country. Do you, I beg, hasten to come to us.

---

a. Dative of service.

Digitized by Google

Lesson 45.

Relations of Time.

1. THE more common relations of Time are expressed by Cases as follows: —

1. Accusative of *duration:* § 256 (G. 337; H. 378);
2. Ablative of time *at* or *within which:* id. (G. 392; H. 426).

a. Distance of time is expressed by **ante** and **post**, used either as prepositions governing the Accusative, or as adverbs with the Ablative, and with either cardinal or ordinal numerals: as,

Ten days from now, ***post decem diēs.***

Ten days afterwards, ***decem post diēbus.***

The tenth day afterwards, ***decimō post diē.***

b. These may be followed by **quam**, with a clause describing the event before or after which anything is: as,

Ten days before he came, ***ante decem diēs*** (***decimum diem, decem diēbus ante***) ***quam vēnit.***

c. Also **abhinc**, *ago*, may be used with either case: as,

Ten days ago, ***abhinc decem diēs,*** or ***diēbus.***

2. In the recording of Dates in the Roman manner, observe —

1. The divisions of the Month by Kalends, Nones, and Ides[a]: § 376, with the introductory Note (G. App.; H. 703);
2. The rule for reckoning by these divisions: id. *d* (G. App.; H. 708. iii.).

a. The number of the day is expressed by an ordinal numeral; the name of the month takes the form of an adjective. Thus the date will appear, if written out in full —

April 19, ***diē tertiō decimō ante kalendās Māiās.***

This is more commonly abridged, thus:

tertiō decimō [***ante***] ***kalendās Māiās;*** or, with numeral letters, ***XIII. kal. Māi.***

---

a. The nouns *Kalendae, Nōnae, Īdūs*, are all feminine plural.

Digitized by Google

b. Often **ante diem** (**a. d.**), with an ordinal, is used like a preposition governing an accusative: as,

This day was the fifth day before the kalends of April (March 28), ***is diēs erat a. d. V. kal. Apr.***

c. This phrase may even be governed by a preposition: as,

To the fifth day before the kalends of November (October 28), ***in a. d. V. kalendās Novembrēs (Novembrīs).***

d. The date of the Roman year is ordinarily expressed by the names of the Consuls in the ablative without a conjunction (compare Note, *Lesson* 37).

Oral Exercises.

1. Within two years. — 2. In the eighth month. — 3. Five months ago. — 4. Seven years before. — 5. For eighteen days. — 6. During more than six days. — 7. He died three years ago. — 8. Twelve years after. — 9. I stood for several hours. — 10. Three days before Cæsar fought with the Gauls. — 11. Twelve years after Cato died. — 12. The day before the Kalends of January (Dec. 31). — 13. About the 5th of December. — 14. September 4. — 15. March 23. — 16. May 15. — 17. June 15. — 18. September 5. — 19. October 5. — 20. May 31. — 21. May 30.

Translate into Latin.

1. I, the ally and friend of the Roman people, am held besieged now the fifth month.

2. Although the period (times) of Homer is uncertain, yet he was many years before Romulus.

3. Cato departed from life eighty-five years old (*nātus*).

4. Here the prætor of the Roman people, the guardian and defender of the province, lived now for successive summer days.

5. After a few days the Senate was freed from the danger of massacre.

6. He died the year before my censorship,[a] ten years after my consulship.

---

a. ante mē cēnsōrem.

Digitized by Google

Lesson 46.

Relations of Place.

[*Compare Lesson* 17.]

In general, the relations of Place are expressed by Prepositions. The following, however, require to be separately noticed: —

1. The Accusative of Extent: § 257 (G. 335; H. 378);
2. The Genitive of Measure: § 215. *b* (G. 364. R.; H. 396. iv. 1, 1));
3. The Ablative of the way *by which:* 258. *g* (G. 387);
4. The special constructions, not requiring a preposition, and used chiefly with the names of Towns: viz.,

a. The Ablative of the place *from which:* § 258. *a* (G. 411; H. 421. i. ii., 424. 1, 2);

b. The Accusative of the place *to which:* § id. *b* (G. 410; H. 379, with 3, 1) and 2));

c. The Locative form of the place *in which:* § id. *c*, *d* (G. 412, with R.[1]; H. 421. i. ii., 424. 1, 2);

d. The Ablative in special locative phrases: id. *f* (G. 385, 386; H. 422. 1, 1)).

Remark. — Prepositions must be used to denote *neighborhood:* as,

Towards (not **into**) or **near Tarentum,** ***ad Tarentum.***

For certain idiomatic uses of Prepositions as indicating place or direction, — especially **ab, ex, in,** — see § 260. *a*, *b*.

Epistle.

Tullius to his Tiro.

We departed from you, as you know, on the second of November. We came to Leucas on the sixth of November, on the seventh to Actium; there we tarried the eighth on account of the weather. Thence on the ninth we sailed in-fine-style to Corcyra. We were at Corcyra until the 15th,[a] delayed by

a. Notice that when this letter was written, B.C. 52, November had only twenty-nine days: the thirtieth was added in Cæsar's reform of the Calendar, B.C. 45.

Digitized by Google

storms. On the 16th, we proceeded a hundred and twenty furlongs into the harbor of the Corcyræans, to [the neighborhood of] Cassiope. There we were kept by the winds until the 22d. On that day, we set sail after dinner (having dined). Thence, with a very gentle south-wind, and a clear sky, we came in-high-spirits on that night and the day after to [the neighborhood of] Hydrus, in Italy; with the same wind the next day — that was Nov. 24 — at the fourth hour, we came to Brundisium; and at the same time with us Terentia, who values you very highly, entered the town. . . . I have left a horse and mule for you at Brundisium. It remains that I ask and beseech this of you, that you do not (*nē*) sail rashly.

IV. — Adjectives and Pronouns.

Lesson 47.

Adjectives: Special Uses.

The points chiefly requiring notice in the use of Adjectives are the following: —

1. The rules for Gender: § 187, with *a*, *b*, *c* (G. 282; H. 439. 2, 3).

2. The use by *Synesis:* id. *d* (G. 202. R.[1]; H. 438. 6).

3. Adjectives (especially in the plural) used as Nouns: § 188 (G. 195. R.[1]; H. 441).

4. Neuter adjectives, singular or plural, including their use as abstracts: § 189. *a*, *b*, *c* (G. 195. R.[2], 202. R.[4]; H. id. with 1, 2; 438. 4).

5. Certain superlatives — as **summus** — with **medius**, etc.: § 193 (G. 287. R.; H. 441. 6) in agreement, as designating a *part*.

6. The reciprocal use of **alius** and **alter**: § 203 (G. 306; H. 459, with 1).

7. The adjective with adverbial force: § 191 (G. 324. R.[6]; H. 443).

Oral Exercises.

1. Pætus and Arria are both dead. — 2. Virtue and honor are to be desired. — 3. Folly is an evil [thing]. — 4. In the

Digitized by Google

first part of the way. — 5. I came unwillingly. — 6. I was the first to come (I the first came). — 7. One helps one, another another. — 8. The nearest part of the province. — 9. In the middle of the assembly. — 10. With the rest of the soldiers. — 11. The love of truth. — 12. He reports the truth (true things). — 13. I read the letter unwillingly. — 14. He is the most ready to follow (= he follows most ready). — 15. In the late [part of the] night. — 16. The greatest part of the boys have gone-off to play (sup.). — 17. I see a great crowd of roughs[a] howling in the square.[b]

Translate into Latin.

1. A little before midnight,[c] going forth from the town in silence, they began to cross the river.

2. This is the third letter (this third letter) I have written to you on the same day.

3. I encamped in the farthest [part of] Cappadocia, not far from the Taurus.

4. They look round one upon another.

5. Treaties are made, one under one condition, another under another.

6. Messala when censor was the first[d] who made a theatre at Rome.

7. They assemble in crowds at daybreak.

8. Some of you are geese, which only scream, [but] cannot harm; others dogs, which can both bark and bite.

9. It shows[e] a great soul to despise greatness (great things), and to prefer mediocrity to (*quam*) excess.

10. Some were sent among the Volscians, others to Cumæ, to collect corn.

11. I commanded the lieutenant to lead these five cohorts to the rest of the army.

12. If you go unwillingly, why do you go?

13. Avarice impels some, anger and rashness others.

14. I love the truth; I wish [to have] the truth told me: I hate a liar.

---

a. turbulentus. — *b. platea.* — *c. media nox.* — *d. primus*, agreeing with the subject. — *e.* = *it is of*, &c.

Digitized by Google

Lesson 48.

Derivatives: Possessives.

DERIVATIVE Adjectives are generally to be preferred to the possessive genitive, and, in many cases, to the locative construction: § 190 (G. 360. R.[1]; H. 398. 2, 3; 441. 5). Thus—

Another man's house, *aliēna domus.*

The fight at Cannæ, *pūgna Cannēnsis* (or, *ad Cannās*).

This use is especially to be remarked in the following cases: —

a. The Personal Pronouns have no possessive genitive: hence the adjectives **meus**, etc., are the only possessive form.

b. As the Possessive is equivalent to a genitive, it may have a genitive in apposition, or a relative in agreement (by *synesis*): as,

The country of us all, *nōstra omnium patria.*

The glory of you who have done this, *vestra quī haec fēcistis glōria.*

REMARK. — As there is no personal pronoun of the third person in Latin, the forms *his*, *him*, *her*, *their*, *them* must be expressed by the oblique cases of the Demonstratives **is, ille, iste, hic.**

Oral Exercises.

1. They pushed back our [men]. — 2. Cæsar exhorts his [troops]. — 3. The war of Cassius. — 4. A rebellion of slaves. — 5. The affairs of the city. — 6. On a mound of earth. — 7. Under the race of Hector. — 8. Great courage and judgment. — 9. The army is not yours, but Cæsar's. — 10. The good all favor me, and the wicked envy me. — 11. He called out as many soldiers as possible. — 12. Your life and character are known to all. — 13. Labor is not an evil. — 14. This is not your shield, but his. — 15. He says this is not your shield, but his. — 16. This was my work alone (of me alone). — 17. Our labors, who are here present. — 18. He was the friend of you (*tuus*), who nevertheless destroyed him.

Digitized by Google

Dialogue.

GRUMIO. Go out doors out of the kitchen, [you] scoundrel, [you] who show-off your wit to me among [my] stew-pans. Go forth, [our] master's ruin, out of the house. I, by Pollux, will punish you well in the country, if I live (fut.). Go out, I say! Why do you skulk?

TRANIO. What the mischief is your (dat.) shouting here in front of the house? Do you think you are in the country? Be off from the house! Go away into the country. Go away and be hanged to you. Be off from the door!—Well! [is] this [what] you wanted?

GR. I am done for! Why do you beat me?

TR. Because you will [it]. What the mischief is your business with me, or what I am doing?

Lesson 49.

Pronouns: Reflexive and Intensive.

AMBIGUITY often arises, in English, from the double meaning of SELF, as reflexive (*sē*) or as intensive (*ipse*). These are to be carefully distinguished in Latin. Thus,

Cato killed himself (reflexive), ***Cato sē occīdit.***

I saw Cato himself (intensive), ***ipsum Catōnem vīdī.***

N.B. The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are also reflexive: as,

I greatly blame myself, ***vehementer mē culpo.***

a. When both are used, the emphatic **ipse** generally agrees with the subject of the verb, not with the object: as,

I myself (I too, or **it is I that) reproach myself,** ***ipse mē culpo.***

b. To express OWN (emphatic), the genitive of **ipse** is used in apposition with the genitive implied in the possessive: as,

You have betrayed your own country, ***vestram ipsōrum patriam prōdidistis.***

Digitized by Google

c. The possessive **suus** is itself emphatic, and is made more so by being prefixed to the noun. Thus —

He slandered [his] **friend,** ***amīcō maledixit*** (*amīcō suō* would be emphatic, and *suō amīcō*, "his own friend," still more emphatic).

REMARK. — The special emphatic use of **īdem** should be compared with that of **ipse**, and the several significations of the latter should be carefully observed: § 195. *f–l* (G. 297, 298; H. 452. 1–5).

Oral Exercises.

1. With Cæsar himself. — 2. He thinks with himself. — 3. Even the veterans fled. — 4. He hates himself. — 5. The very walls tremble. — 6. Even into the forum. — 7. Our own pursuits. — 8. He despises his own [possessions]. — 9. In saying this he (*īdem*) denies that he is a Roman. — 10. You have great confidence in yourself (*tuī*). — 11. Devotion (*studium*) to us. — 12. Even to me, his friend, he seems a liar.

Translate into Latin.

1. You even gave yourself into custody.

2. I am like myself, and they are like themselves.

3. I desire nothing more than that I be like myself, and they [like] themselves.[a]

4. He himself spoke in his own behalf, and Caius Cotta [spoke] briefly,[b] because he was [his] sister's son.

5. First give thanks to the immortal gods, then to your own valor.

6. Not even they themselves compare themselves with them in valor.

7. The town Alesia itself was on the top of the hill.

8. No one sees the pirate-captain himself, upon whom punishment ought to have been inflicted.

9. They themselves have come-to-their-senses through admiration of my resolution.

10. They remember all the things which they care for, — who owe them, whom they themselves owe.

---

a. Either accusative with infinitive, or *ut* with subjunctive. — *b*. Few-things.

Digitized by Google

Anecdote.

[When] Chabrias the Athenian [was] about to fight with the fleet, — as a thunderbolt struck (*excussus*)[a] in front of his own ship, [and] the soldiers were[a] scared by such a prodigy, — he said, "Now especially we should enter into battle, when Jupiter, the greatest of the gods, shows that his favor is with our fleet."

Lesson 50.

Relative Pronouns.

THE general construction of the Relative may be defined as follows: —

a. As a *connective*, it agrees with its antecedent in gender, person, and number;

b. As a *pronoun*, it has its own construction in its own clause. Thus —

The Remi, who were nearest, sent ambassadors, *Rēmī, quī proximī erant, lēgātōs mīsērunt.*

Here **quī**, subject of **erant**, connects the relative to the antecedent clause by agreement with **Rēmī**, subject of the main verb, **mīsērunt**.

REMARK. — For the various constructions of the relative and antecedent clause, see the references and examples in *Lesson* 4.

Translate into Latin.

1. [Those] who were consulted[b] were in great power.
2. What both the republic and our friendship exhort me, [that] I do willingly.
3. What [of] hostages were left, he restored.
4. There is a place in the prison which[c] is called Tullianum.
5. What I value highest in those matters, that I now have.
6. He who hears an orator believes what (those things which) is said.
7. These divine and excellent qualities (*bona*) which we see in Marcus Cato, be asssured that [they] are his own.

---

a. Ablative absolute. — *b*. Habitual action. — *c*. The relative agrees with the predicate.

Digitized by Google

8. This is the origin of the first temple (of all) that[a] was consecrated at Rome.

9. The letter which you sent to me on the march before you went out of Asia, I read very unwillingly.[b]

10. Thither came the magistrates of the Sicilians, [thither] came the Roman knights, as (*id quod*) you have heard from many witnesses.

11. He hastens where (to the place to which) he had sent Labienus.

12. The pirates were at your house one [month], a second month, in short, almost a year, from the time when (from what time) they were taken.

13. That prison which is called "the quarries," which was made at Syracuse by the cruel (sup.) tyrant Dionysius, was the residence of Roman citizens under (in) the rule of that [wretch].

Lesson 51.

Correlatives.

A RELATIVE word — Pronoun, Adjective, or Adverb — always refers to, or implies, an antecedent word *of its own class*, and is subject to the same rules of Attraction or omission of Antecedent that have been given in the case of relative Pronouns (*Lesson* 4). The following are the points chiefly requiring notice: —

a. When AS follows a demonstrative word — SUCH, SO, AS — it is to be considered a Relative, and rendered by the Correlative of the antecedent Demonstrative: see lists, § 106 (G. 645. 1, 2). Thus —

So (as) great ... as, ***tantus ... quantus.***
Such ... as, ***tālis ... quālis.***
So (as) many ... as, ***tot ... quot.***
The same ... as, ***īdem ... quī; idem ... quod.***

b. The correlative expression THE ... THE, with Comparatives,

---

a. = *which first of all.* — *b.* Adjective.

Digitized by Google

is to be rendered by **quō . . . eō, quantō . . . tantō** (ablative of *degree of difference*). Thus —

The wiser he is, the less he seems wise to himself, *quō est sapientior, eō minus sapiēns sibi vidētur.*

Oral Exercises.

1. As much bravery as wisdom. — 2. As many opinions as men. — 3. With as great judgment[a] as authority. — 4. The same ships as before. — 5. The lighter, the swifter. — 6. The firmer I am, the longer is the war. — 7. Such heroes as we have never seen. — 8. So great enmities as you have incurred. — 9. How many ships have the Romans built? — 10. Do you know how many ships the Romans built? — 11. Did they build such ships as the Carthaginians use? — 12. They have the same arms as before.

Translate into Latin.

1. As often as we speak, judgment is passed upon us.

2. There are as many kinds of speech (of speaking) as duties of the orator.

3. Nor nevertheless does this require so much labor[b] as it seems.

4. Order[c] to be promised to the physician [as much] pay as he shall demand.

5. What strait, what Euripus, do you think has so many movements, so great and so various tossings of the waves, as[d] the business of the comitia has disturbances and eddyings?

6. He was not sorry to do the same as you.

7. It is not so fine [a thing] to know Latin, as disgraceful not to know [it].

8. That most severe war of the Volscians, in which Coriolanus took-part [as] an exile, was at about the same time as the war of the Persians.

9. [As much] land was given as he ploughed around in one day.

10. Bestow as much care upon yourself as you have love for me (you love me).

---

a. The partitive genitive (*Lesson* 38) cannot be used here; the adjective must agree. — *b.* = is of so much labor. — *c.* Imperative. — *d. quantus.*

Digitized by Google

11. The king fortifies [his] camp in the same place in which he had routed the forces of the enemy.

12. Publius Servilius recaptured the pirate with the same good fortune[a] with which he had captured him.

13. The longer I consider, the more obscure the matter seems to me.

Lesson 52.

Indefinite Pronouns.

THE following significations of the various Indefinites should be carefully distinguished, and the examples below studied and compared.

a. SOME, SOME ONE, or A is **aliquis, quispiam,** or **nescio quis**; when more definite, = A CERTAIN, **quīdam**: as,

Don't you see somebody in yonder field? ***vidēsne aliquem in istō agrō?***

A merchant was walking out yesterday, ***mercātor quīdam herī deambulābat.***

b. ANY is variously rendered, viz., —

1. In a universal negative, — NOT ANY, WITHOUT ANY, — by **quisquam** (subst.) or **ūllus** (adj.): as,

I came, but saw nobody, ***vēnī nec quemquam vīdī.***

The boy did it without any help at all, ***puer sine ūllō auxiliō hōc effēcit.***

2. After IF, LEST, UNLESS, WHETHER, also in questions implying a negative, **quis** is used in preference, though **quisquam** may be used less indefinitely. Thus —

Can anybody do this? ***num quis hōc facere potest?*** (implying that nobody can).

3. In a universal affirmative — ANY ONE WHATEVER — by **quīvīs, quīlibet.** Thus —

Is it for any one [who will] **to do this?** ***num cūjusvīs est hōc facere?*** (i.e., it can be done, but not by everybody).

---

a. In the relative clause.

Digitized by Google

c. The Distributive EACH, EVERY, is **quisque**; EACH (of two), **uterque**; EVERY ONE (used independently, without a subordinate clause), **ūnusquisque**: as,

Every one likes his own best, ***suum cuique maximē placet.***

REMARK. — **Quisque** stands rather in the subordinate than in the principal clause: as,

Let each strive as much as he can, ***quantum quisque potest, tantum nītātur.***

Compare §§ 93. *c*, 202. *d*, *e* (G. 305, with R.[1], 645. 2. R.[2]; H. 458. 1, 2, 461. 3).

Examples.

1. **Do you think anybody here is wiser than Solomon?** ***num quemquam hōrum Salomōne sapientiōrem esse putās?***
2. **A neighbor of ours is just going to sail for Europe,** ***vicīnus quīdam nōster ad Eurōpam nāvigātūrus est.***
3. **Did you earn anything besides your board and clothes?** ***num quicquam meritus es praeter cibum et vestem?***
4. **The little wasp is fiercer than any wild beast,** ***pārva vespa quāvīs ferā est ferōcior.***
5. **I hardly know any one more gentlemanly than your friend,** ***nēminem ferē amīcō tuō līberāliōrem nōvī.***
6. **I never heard anything more painful than that news,** ***istō nūntiō nihil umquam audīvī luctuōsius.***
7. **The estate of Rome was equal to any of the neighbor cities,** ***rēs Rōmāna cuilibet fīnitimārum cīvitātum pār erat.***
8. **The bravest men make least noise about it,** ***fortissimus quisque minimē glōriātur.***
9. **Here you see all the resources I have,** ***ibi vidēs quicquid habeo cōpiārum;***
10. **The greater the army, the more the carnage,** ***quō mājor exercitus eō gravior clādēs est;*** or, ***ut quisque est exercitus maximus, ita gravissima clādēs.***

Digitized by Google

Oral Exercises.

1. Some fields. — 2. In a certain field. — 3. Without any danger. — 4. Anybody can sit an hour. — 5. Can anybody[a] do so great things? — 6. Can somebody do this? — 7. Who will do this? — 8. Will anybody do this? — 9. It is not every one[b] that can sit ten hours. — 10. Without anybody. — 11. Each will go when he is[c] ready. — 12. All the boldest. — 13. Each loves his own (his own [things] are dear to each). — 14. Each of the scouts is ready. — 15. Each took what he pleased (what pleased each). — 16. All the eloquent will be listened-to. — 17. He performed each of [his] duties.

Translate into Latin.

1. A rude and rustic voice pleases some [persons].

2. He was equal to anybody in speaking Latin.

3. Is there any shame? any religion? any fear?

4. Do you think that anybody was more moderate than Cato, your great-grandfather?

5. Ancus reigned twenty-four years, equal to any of the former kings in the arts and glory of war and peace.

6. I find in some [writers] that in this year was the fight (it was fought) at Lake Regillus.

7. He asked whether he brought anything else besides the chest.

8. I earnestly beg of you to bring [it] about that no injury be done to me, and that no (*nēve quid*) time be added to my year's duty.

9. I understand that certain wonderful [doctrines] have pleased some [men], who, I hear, have been esteemed wise in Greece.

10. Why do you ask any one to favor you, to aid you?

11. I neither dare nor ought to place any burden upon you.

12. If any one was ever averse, both by nature and reason and education, to empty praise, I certainly am he.

13. Each in order, as he excelled[d] in age and honor, so spoke[d] his opinion.

---

a. Express this with both meanings. — *b.* = *it is not of any one you please.* — *c. shall be.* — *d.* The imperfect describes, the perfect states: § 115. *b.*

Digitized by Google

14. He summoned to himself all the best and noblest.

15. They will be-on-hand each in his own time.

16. Each for himself migrates from the country (fields) into the city.

17. In the great need, each, in-proportion-to his private means, even[a] defrauding himself of his sustenance, bestowed something upon him.

18. Each, [in proportion] as he speaks well, so (*ita maximē*) fears the difficulty of speaking, and the various accidents of speech, and the expectation of men.

19. They go to the houses of those with whom each had served.

20. It was then the custom that[b] they were ready to grant (in granting) to each his [own].

21. His own fraud and his own terror chiefly worry each.

22. It must be considered, not how much each benefits, but how much[c] each is [worth].

23. The more each[d] trusts himself, and the more each is fortified by virtue and wisdom, the more[d] he excels in winning and maintaining friendship (plur.).

24. Each formed opinions, and added something of his own fear to[e] that which he had heard from another.

V. — Subordinate Clauses.

Note. — For the definition of the several forms of Subordinate Clause, see § 180. *c*, *d*, *e*, comparing the Note prefixed to § 316, and the lists of Subordinate Conjunctions in § 155. D.–H. (G. 505, 508; H. 588. i.–viii.). For the Sequence of Tenses in subordinate clauses, see *Lesson* 20, comparing *Lesson* 32.

Lesson 53.

Simple Conditional Clauses.

The rules for Simple Conditions (if) may be stated as follows (compare *Lesson* 21) : —

---

a. ipse. — *b. ut.* — *c.* § 252. *a* (G. 379; H. 402. 2, 1)). — *d.* Use *quisque* (with superlatives). — *e.* Dative, or *ad* with accusative.

Digitized by Google

a. When the Condition has reference to present or past time, — that is, when the existence or non-existence of the case supposed is in itself a matter of certainty, — use the Indicative. Thus —

If Cato is [now] **in Rome** (of which I am not sure), **he will call upon me, *sī Cato Rōmae est, mē conveniet.***

b. For the future time, either the Indicative or the Present Subjunctive may be used; the Future Indicative is equivalent to the idiomatic use of the Present Indicative in English; as,

If Cato is in Rome [when I arrive] **he will call upon me, *sī Cato Rōmae erit, mē conveniet.***

c. The Present Subjunctive expresses a future condition less distinctly, answering to the English use of *should* in the protasis, and *should* or *would* in the apodosis. Thus —

If Cato should be in Rome [at any future time] **he would call upon me, *sī Cato Rōmae sit, mē conveniat.***

Oral Exercises.

1. If you are well, I am glad. — 2. If he was not there, he was at Rome. — 3. If this book is yours (*est tibi*) give it to me. — 4. If you do rightly, you are praised. — 5. If you [shall] do rightly, you will be praised. — 6. If you should do rightly, you would be praised. — 7. Unless you do rightly, you will not be praised. — 8. If you did not fight, you were cowards. — 9. If you do not fight, you are cowards. — 10. If you do not fight, you will be conquered. — 11. If Marcus should remain, we should be glad; but if he should go, we would still praise him.

Translate into Latin.

1. If you see the good throng to me, will you invite the wicked to yourself?

2. If the people should meet with you, and could speak with one voice, it would say this.

3. If by chance that which concerns me less pleases you more, I will restore that ædileship to you.

4. If you should ask me what (*quālis*) I consider the nature of the gods to be, I should perhaps make no answer.

Digitized by Google

5. As, if any one should say that the republic of the Athenians is ruled by counsel, the word (*illud*) "of the Areopagus" would be-understood, so when we say that the world is controlled by providence, consider that "of the gods" is-understood.

6. If any god should grant to me that, from this period-of-life, I might become-a-boy-again, and cry in the cradle, I should strongly object.

7. If I should desire from you the greatest services, it ought (would deserve) to seem strange to no one.

8. If I should say this, that I passed over the province on your account, I should seem too fickle even (*ipse*) to you.

Lesson 54.

Other Conditional Clauses.

OTHER forms of Conditional Clause are as follows: —

a. For Conditions Contrary to Fact, Secondary Tenses of the Subjunctive are to be used: § 308 (G. 599; H. 510, with 1). Thus —

If he were [now] **here he would say thus,** ***sī adesset ita dīceret.***

If he had been present he would have said thus, ***sī adfuisset ita dīxisset.***

REMARK. — The Indicative is often used in the apodosis for greater vividness, especially with the participles in **-ūrus** and **-dus**, and with expressions of *power*, *permission*, etc.: § 308. *b*, *c*, *d* (G. 599. R.[2], R.[3], R.[4], R.[5]; H. 511. ii., 512. 2, 1), 2)). Thus —

I was about to fight [and should have done it] **had you not interposed,** ***dīmicātūrus eram nisi obstitissēs.***

If he were [now] **a private man at Rome yet he ought to be appointed,** ***sī Rōmae prīvātus esset tamen erat dēligendus*** (Cic.). Compare, in Indirect Discourse —

I am quite sure that he would have come if he could, ***certō scio eum ventūrum fuisse sī potuisset.***

b. In General Conditions, (1) the second person singular of the Present Subjunctive is used to denote an *indefinite subject*; and (2)

Digitized by Google

in narrative the Secondary Tenses are (by late usage) employed to express *customary action*: § 309. *a*, *b* (G. 597. R.[1], 569. R.[2]; H. 486. iii. 5). The apodosis is in the Indicative. Thus —

The memory weakens unless you practise it, *memoria minuitur nisi eam exercēās.*

When[ever] he had said this he hurled a spear, *ubi hōc dīxisset hastam prōjēcit.* (Compare *a*, under *Lesson* 22.)

Other cases of General Condition take the Indicative.

Oral Exercises.

1. If this were so, I should be glad. — 2. If you had gone, I should have gone with you. — 3. Unless I were well, I should not set out. — 4. If you loved Cæsar (at some former time), you did well. — 5. If you loved Cæsar (now, — as you do not), you would do this. — 6. If you had loved Cæsar, you would have done this. — 7. I could have helped him, had he not refused. — 8. If a soldier met him he [habitually] saluted him. — 9. If you do rightly you are happy.

Translate into Latin.

1. I would write more, if I thought that you could read longer (*jam*) with pleasure.

2. If you had gone to Britain also, surely no one in that so great island would have been more experienced than you.

3. If it were necessary for me only to speak against Laterensis, nevertheless even (*ipsum*) this would be offensive in our great (*tantus*) intimacy and friendship.

4. If he had lived to [his] hundredth year, would he therefore regret his old age?

5. He was a tribune of the people, not perhaps so violent as those whom you justly praise, but at-any-rate such a one [that] if all had always been like (*quālis*) [him], a violent tribune would never have been desired.

6. If plane-trees bore viols sounding rhythmically, of-course you would judge that music resided in plane-trees.

7. Whatever brought great advantage to the human race, this they thought took place not without a divine goodness towards men.

Digitized by Google

8. If I were the first to speak this opinion, you certainly would praise [me]; if the only one, you at any rate would pardon [me].

9. Should you not think that these men should be torn away from the provinces, if they were not at-some-time to be withdrawn [from them]?

Lesson 55.

Implied Conditions.

1. Of Disguised Conditions the most frequent are —

a. A participial or other qualifying clause: § 310. *a* (G. 594. 1, 2, 3; H. 503. 2, 1), 2)). This often takes the form of the Ablative Absolute: as,

If I had received the letter I should have set out, *epistulā acceptā profectus essem.*

b. An expression of Wish, Command, or hypothetical statement: § 310. *b*, *c* (G. 594. 4, 600; H. 503. 1, 535. 2).

2. Omitted Conditions are —

a. The Potential Subjunctive (so called): § 311. *a* (G. 250, 252; cf 602²; H 485. 486. i, with 4, 6);

b. The Subjunctive of cautious or doubtful statement: § 311. *b* (G. 250; H 486. 3).

Remark — Here belongs the common use of **velim**, etc., in polite wish, and **vellem** to denote what is no longer possible Compare the Dubitative Subjunctive: § 268 (G. 251, 258; H. 486 ii).

Oral Exercises.

1. You would have thought that a god spoke. — 2. Who would say that this is so? — 3. I am-inclined-to-believe that Cæsar so wishes. — 4. Why should I say more? — 5. I wish you were to be here. — 6. I wish you were here. — 7. Who would not rather be wise than rich? — 8. This would have been disgraceful! — 9. I should say that you were worthy of praise. — 10. I am sorry (*nōllem*) that this has happened. — 11. No

Digitized by Google

one, not a fool, would have thought so. — 12. A stranger or an enemy might have said that. — 13. To look at him, you would say he was a dunce. Hear him discourse, and you would call him shrewder and wittier than Socrates.

Translate into Latin.

1. I could wish (*vellem*) that he had been able to conform to your desire.

2. Nor would you find [any] other thing greater or more excellent.

3. Should I have feared (imp. subj.) that I, that fiercest enemy of kings, should myself undergo the charge of a desire of royalty?

4. Shall I joke with you by letter, or write something more serious?

5. Whither shall I, wretch [that I am], betake myself? To the Capitol? But it is wet with the blood of my brother. Home? That I may see my wretched mother lamenting and distressed?

6. Why should I not confess what is necessary?

7. As I just said, in nearly all things, and especially in physics, I can tell what is not [true] quicker than what is.

8. If I lay aside even my enmities for the sake of the republic, who, pray, would have any right to blame me (blame me rightfully)?

Epistle.

Cicero to his Atticus.

I readily believe that you are glad to be at home. But I should like to know what remains for you, or whether you have already finished. I am expecting you in my Tusculan [estate], and the more on this account, because you wrote to Tiro that you would come immediately, and added that you thought there was need. Altogether I used to feel how much good you did me [when] present, but I feel [it] much more since your departure. Wherefore, as I wrote to you before, either I [must go] to you wholly,[a] or do you [come] to me when you may.

---

a. Use the adjective § 191.

Digitized by Google

Lesson 56.

Comparative and Concessive Clause.

[*Compare Lesson* 20.]

CLOSELY allied in construction and meaning to Conditional clauses are —

1. Comparative clauses (introduced by AS IF): § 312, with Rem. (G. 604; H. 506);

2. Concessive clauses (ALTHOUGH): § 313 (G. 606–610; H. 516);

3. Clauses of Proviso (PROVIDED THAT): § 314 (G. 575; H. 503. i., 505).

Examples.

You stray as if you were blind, ***errās tamquam caecus sīs*** (compare *Lesson* 20).

Though you are blind you do not stray, ***quamquam caecus es tamen nōn errās.***

Provided the health be good, ***valētūdo modo bona sit.***

Oral Exercises.

1. He speaks as if he knew. — 2. He spoke as if he knew. — 3. Although you are wise I do not believe you. — 4. However wise you are, you do not know the number of the stars. — 5. Granting that you are wise, can you foretell the future? — 6. He related Cæsar's death, as if he had seen it. — 7. However loud you speak, he will not hear you. — 8. Provided you be wise, no one will harm you. — 9. Although the enemy (plur.) were near, they advanced as if they knew there was no danger. — 10. Although you be my friend, there is yet a dispute between us.

Translate into Latin.

1. Do not expect arguments from me, judges, as if there were some (*aliquid*) doubt.

2. Why do I make use of these witnesses, as if the matter were doubtful or obscure?

3. Their natural powers remain to old men, provided their interest and industry continue.

Digitized by Google

4. Although old age be not burdensome, yet it takes away that vigor in which Scipio was even now.

5. Scipio, a very few days before his death, as if he presaged [it], discoursed for three days on public affairs.

6. The territory, granting that there be ten acres apiece, cannot support more than five thousand men.

7. [This] excellent man is on his guard not to buy (*nē* with subj.) from [one who is] unwilling. As if truly we did not understand that to buy from one who is unwilling is a losing [job]; from one who is willing, profitable.

8. Although he is not at all to be despised in speaking, yet he depends rather upon his foresight of important matters than upon his skill (*ars*) in speaking.

9. If you had brought me Sicyonian slippers, I would not use [them], however comfortable and well-fitted to the foot they were, because they are not manly.

10. Let them hate, provided they fear.

Lesson 57.

Temporal Clauses.

RELATIVE clauses of Time (WHEN, WHILE, UNTIL) may be regarded according as their action precedes, follows, or accompanies that of the leading clause.

a. Time *preceding* that of the leading verb, being definite and precise, is expressed by the Indicative (generally the Perfect), introduced by **postquam**, etc.: § 324 (G. 563; H. 471. 4).

b. For time *following* that of the leading verb, may be used —

1. To state the limit *as a fact*, the tenses of the Indicative: §§ 327. *a*, *c*, 328 (G. 576–578, 573; H. 523. i., 522. i. 2);

2. In narration, more commonly, the Imperfect or Pluperfect subjunctive with **antequam** or **priusquam**: § 327; cf. 325 (G. 579; H. 523. ii. 2);

3. To imply purpose, the Subjunctive with **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**: § 328 (G. 574; H. 522. ii.).

Digitized by Google

REMARK. — **Antequam** and **priusquam** are often divided into two words, when the **ante** or **prius** stands as an adverb in the principal clause, and **quam** introduces the subordinate clause; in this case they are to be translated together in the subordinate clause as *before* or *until*; as,

Nor did he let him go until he gave a pledge, *neque ante dīmīsit eum quam fidem dedit.*

c. Time *accompanying* that of the leading verb regularly takes the Present Indicative with **dum**, even when it relates to past time: § 276. *e* (G. 572; H. 467. 4). Thus —

While these things were going on, word was brought, *dum haec geruntur, nūntiātum est.*

Oral Exercises.

1. We will wait until you arrive. — 2. I will see you before Caius sets out. — 3. I saw you before Caius set out. — 4. While he was standing, the enemy escaped. — 5. After they had crossed the river, they were attacked by the Gauls. — 6. Before they reached the town, fighting began. — 7. While these things were going on, Cæsar set out with the tenth legion. — 8. As soon as I saw you, I cried out. — 9. He cried out[a] before he saw me. — 10. He cried out[a] until I came to him. — 11. You-may (*licet*) sleep as-long-as you fear nothing. — 12. He will keep-on (*persevēro*[1]) until he reaches [his] end. — 13. So-far-as custom permits, I will proceed.

Translate into Latin.

1. It greatly concerns each of us, that I see you before you go away.[b]

2. He brought all together into one place, before word could be brought to the Arvernians of his arrival.

3. The Gauls crossed into Italy two hundred years before they laid siege to Clusium and took Rome.

4. He would have surpassed the happiness (*fortūna*) of all, if it had been his (dat.) good-fortune (*contingit*) to see (*ut*, etc.) you before he departed[b] from life.

a. Notice the tense. — *b.* Subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

5. Before I approach those [points] which have been discussed by you, I will say what I think of you yourself.

6. While he delayed a few days, fear suddenly seized upon all the army.

7. I wish you would call-to-mind what I did in the Senate in regard to you after you set out, what I said in the assemblies, what letters I sent to you.

Anecdote.

Cornelia, the mother of the Gracchi, when a Campanian matron (a guest at her house) was showing her most beautiful ornaments, detained her by conversation until her children returned from school; and then said,[a] "These are my ornaments."

Lesson 58.

Special Uses of *Cum*.

THE use of the particle CUM requires to be especially noticed, as employed to express —

1. Absolute time, with the Indicative: § 325, with Note, and *a*, *b*, *c* (G. 582–585);

2. Relative time, with the Secondary tenses of the Subjunctive: § 325 (G. 586; H. 518. ii. 1);

3. Cause or Concession (SINCE, WHILE, THOUGH), with the Subjunctive: § 326 (G. 587. R.; H. 518. 1).

Examples.

When he had come, ***cum vēnisset.***

When he comes (shall come), ***cum veniet.***

Since he has arrived, ***cum advēnerit.***

Oral Exercises.

1. When I am at Athens, I always visit Mars' Hill. — 2. When I am at Athens, I shall visit Mars' Hill. — 3. When I was at Athens, I visited Mars' Hill. — 4. When I leave Athens, I shall return to Rome. — 5. Since night is approach-

a. Use *inquam*.

Digitized by Google

ing, let us depart. — 6. Since night was approaching, they separated. — 7. When night approached, they separated.

Translate into Latin.

1. When I compare my action with yours, although I do not favor myself more than [I do] you, nevertheless I am much better (*magis*) pleased with my action than yours.

2. When ambassadors had come to him to beg[a] that he would pardon them and consult for their lives[b] (sing.), he orders the arms to be collected, the horses to be brought forward, [and] hostages to be given.

3. You who ask this, do somewhat (*similiter*) as if you asked me why I look at you with two eyes and not with one (*alter*), since I can accomplish the same thing with one.

4. He was acquitted by an assembly[c] of the Roman people, although he confessed that his sister had been killed by his hand.

Anecdote.

Agesilaus, the Lacedæmonian, when he had placed his camp opposite the Thebans above a river-bank, and understood that the force of the enemy was much greater, and for-this-reason wished to restrain his men from the desire of fighting, said that he was ordered by an oracle of the gods to fight on high ground (*ex collibus*); and so, placing a small guard at the bank, he approached the hills. [But] the Thebans interpreting this[d] (as *prō*) fear, crossed the river; and when they had easily driven back the guard, following the rest too eagerly,[e] they were beaten by fewer men, on account of the disadvantage of the position.

Dialogue.

TRANIO. Look around again.

THEOPROPIDES. There is no one. Speak now at once.

TR. It is a fatal deed.

TH. What is that? I don't understand.

---

a. Supine in *um*. — *b*. Dative. — *c*. The assembly was not regarded as a person, or corporate body, but as a mere instrument of action. — *d*. Relative. — *e*. Comparative: § 93. *a*.

Digitized by Google

TR. A crime, I say, was committed long ago, old and ancient; this deed we have just now discovered.

TH. What villainy is that, or who did it? Tell me.

TR. A host killed his guest [whom he had] caught with his hand. He, as I think, who sold this house to you.

TH. Killed?

TR. And took away gold from [that] same guest, and buried that guest here in-this very-place in the house.

TH. Why do you suspect that this was done?

TR. I will tell [you]. Listen. When your son had dined out (*foris*), after he returns home from supper, we all go to bed. We went to sleep. I had forgotten by chance to put out the light; and he all-of-a-sudden cries out at-the-top-of-his-voice.

TH. Who? my son?

TR. St, — be quiet; he says that that dead man came to him in sleep. This is (*ecce*) what that dead man said to him: "I am Diapontius, a guest from-beyond-sea. Here I dwell. This dwelling was given to me. For Orcus would not (*nōluit*) receive me to Acheron, because I am deprived of life prematurely. I was deceived through confidence. My host here killed me, and he buried me secretly in this house, the villain, for the sake of gold. Now do thou depart hence. This house is accursed; this dwelling is impious."

Lesson 59.

Causal Clauses.

CAUSAL clauses regularly take the Indicative; but they take the Subjunctive when the reason is not simply stated as a fact, but assigned as a motive: as,

Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, *Sōcratēs accūsātus est quod corrumperet juventūtem.*

a. This is regularly the case with relative clauses expressing a reason: as,

Since I see, *quippe quī videam.*

Digitized by Google

b. In negative clauses **nōn quō** may be used in preference to **nōn quod** or **nōn quia**: compare § 341. R. (G. 538. R., 541. R.[1]; H. 520. 3): as,

Not that I fear, *nōn quō timeam.*

Oral Exercises.

1. He hates me, because I am luckier than he. — 2. He hates me on-the-ground-that I have thwarted him. — 3. He is fortunate *in having* you with him. — 4. Since Cæsar is my friend, I dare resist you. — 5. Since [he thought] Cæsar was absent, he opposed his plans. — 6. I resisted him, not that I thought him an enemy, but I did not approve his designs.

Translate into Latin.

1. Although, as I have written you before, wherever you are, you are in the same boat [with me], yet I congratulate you on your absence, because you do not see the things that we [see].

2. I congratulate you on being absent.

3. He accuses them of having held discourses of this sort concerning him.

4. I had said that this first point needed no argument, because it is[a] clear to all that there are gods.

5. I appeared to bear my misfortune bravely, — not that I bore it with equanimity, but I consoled myself [by] thinking that there would not be a long separation between us.

6. I did not accept even that; not that I thought [it] inconsistent with my dignity, but because I did not suspect that so great a crime was hanging over the republic.

7. If you did not know that Metellus thought thus (*haec*) of me, you ought to consider that your brother kept you ignorant[b] [in regard to] the most important matters; but if, however, he imparted to you something of his plan, I ought to be considered lenient and easy by you, since I make no complaint[c] to (*cum*) you in regard to these very matters.

---

a. Follow the rule of sequence of tenses. — *b.* *cēlo*, with the accusative of the person. — *c.* = "complain [as to] nothing."

Digitized by Google

Anecdote.

Tarquin the Proud, the father, thinking that the chiefs of the Gabinians ought to be put to death, because he was not willing that this should be entrusted to any one, made no answer[a] to the messenger who had been sent him by his son; nevertheless he struck off with a staff the tall poppy-heads, since by chance he was walking in a garden. The messenger, having returned without an answer, brought word to the young Tarquin what he had seen his father doing. He understood that the same thing was to be done to the eminent Gabinians.

Lesson 60.

Final Clauses.

CLAUSES expressing a Purpose require the Subjunctive with *ut* (negatively *nē*) or a relative: as,

He sent men to plough the field, *hominēs mīsit ut* [*quī*] *agrum arārent.*

REMARK. — For the various expressions of Purpose, see § 318, with *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* (G. 544. R.[2]). For the use of **ut** and **nē**, with expressions of Fear, see *Lesson* 29, Remark.

a. In negative clauses **nē quis, nē quid, nē umquam**, etc., must be used for **ut nēmo, ut nihil, ut numquam**, etc.: these last are used in clauses of Result.

b. When there is a comparative in the sentence, **quō** is generally used in preference to **ut**: as,

That he might come the sooner, *quō citius venīret.*

c. Substantive clauses which express a Purpose, following verbs of wishing, advising, necessity, &c., often omit the **ut** or **nē**: § 331. *f*. Rem. (G. 546. R.[3]; H. 493. 2);

d. With phrases like **ut ita dīcam**, *so to speak*; **nē plūra dīcam**, *not to say more*, the principal clause is often omitted: § 317. *c*.

Oral Exercises.

1. I have come to meet you. — 2. I came to meet Balbus. — 3. This is a pleasant spot, not to say delightful. — 4. He is a

---

a. = *answered nothing*.

Digitized by Google

brave man, — I do not say a good man. — 5. We fight that we may not be-slaves. — 6. He is another Plato, so to speak.

7. They founded a city which should be a refuge to the distressed. — 8. We listen, that we may be more wise. — 9. We set out at once in order that we might arrive earlier. — 10. Beware of pardoning. — 11. It is necessary that we set out.

12. I will ask him to come. — 13. I wish you were at Rome. — 14. Now, to pass over such [points], I will speak of making peace. — 15. I fear you are not sufficiently wily. — 16. He feared that the Gauls would attack him on the march. — 17. I fear he will not win the royal power.

Translate into Latin.

1. Three hundred of us (we, three hundred), chiefs of the Roman youth, have sworn to assault you.

2. I think that something should be given the physician himself, that he may be more zealous.

3. He sends forward to the Boii [men] who shall inform [them] of his arrival, and exhort them to remain in their fidelity, and withstand the attack of the enemy with good courage.

4. She whispers to (with) herself, but [so] that I may hear.

5. In the first place, I wish you to consider this, — that your feelings are strongly approved by me (dat.).

6. This one thing I do not know, whether to congratulate [you] or fear for you; not that I fear that your virtue will not meet the expectation of men, but, by Hercules, lest, when you come (fut. perf.), you have no longer [any thing] to care for (*quod*, etc.).

7. As I myself have always joined Latin with Greek, I am of opinion that you should do the same, that you may be equally-good (*pār*) in the use of each language (*sermo*).

8. I wish you would send letters as often as possible, especially if there shall be any better-established [state of things], in-regard-to-which[a] we may have-hope.

9. But, to pass over the common cause, let us come to ours.

---

a. Use the relative.

Digitized by Google

10. Do you think, pray, that it was easier for Ligarius to go out of Africa, or for you not to come into Africa?

11. I fear, Crassus, that I cannot concede those two points to you.

12. Do not fear, Hortensius, that I shall ask how it was permitted to a senator to build a ship.

Anecdote.

Manius Curius, the most perfect type of Roman frugality, and at the same time the most complete model of bravery, presented himself to the ambassadors of the Samnites, sitting at the hearth on a rude stool, and dining out of a wooden bowl. For he despised the wealth of the Samnites, [and] the Samnites wondered at his poverty. For when they had brought to him a great weight of gold, sent by the state (*pūblicē*), he, when invited with kind words to be willing to use it, broke into laughter, and said at once: "Agents of a superfluous, not to say foolish, mission, report to the Samnites that Manius Curius would rather rule the rich than himself be rich; and carry back that costly gift, and remember that I can neither be conquered in battle nor corrupted by money."

Lesson 61.

Consecutive Clauses.

CLAUSES of Result, like those of Purpose, take the Subjunctive after UT or with a relative: as,

They place their chariots in such a way that they have a speedy retreat, *ita currūs conlocant, ut expedītum receptum habeant.*

a. In negative clauses of Result, **ut nōn** is used instead of **nē**, **ut nēmo** for **nē quis**, etc.

b. After secondary tenses the Perfect Subjunctive may be used in clauses of Result, to represent the historical perfect of the direct statement: as,

The discussion reached such a height that he fled to Vitellius, *eō discordiae ventum* [*est*], *ut ad Vitellium perfūgerit* (Direct, ***ad Vitellium perfūgit*).**

Digitized by Google

c. The relative is often used in clauses of Result, where the English idiom uses AS with the infinitive. Thus —

Who is so silly as to believe this? ***quis est tam ineptus quī hōc crēdat?***

d. A peculiar construction in Latin is the phrase **tantum abest,** followed by an **ut** clause as subject and another as result: § 332. *d* (G. 556. R.[1]; H. 496. 3).

It is so far [from being true] **that friendships are sought on account of need, that those who need another least are the most liberal,** ***tantum abest ut amīcitiae propter indigentiam colantur, ut iī quī minimē alterius indigeant, līberālissimī sint.***

Here the substantive clause **ut . . . colantur** is subject of **abest,** and the consecutive clause **ut . . . sint** depends upon **tantum.**

REMARK. — For the use of **quōminus** and **quīn** in clauses of Result, see § 319. *c, d* (G. 547, 549–551; H. 498, 499).

Oral Exercises.

1. Who is so rash as to dare this? — 2. The river is so swift that we cannot swim in it. — 3. The cold is so great that wine freezes. — 4. I am so far (*abest,* not *absum*) from being unfriendly to you, that I value you very highly. — 5. Cæsar was so far from being defeated that he even pursued the enemy.

6. The peril was so great that we fled. — 7. I am not so suspicious as not to believe you. — 8. Nothing hinders me from aiding Pompey. — 9. Nothing hindered me from aiding you. — 10. I shall never be prevented from rejoicing. — 11. There is no doubt that Rome is the capital of the world.

12. We do not object to your thinking us foolish. — 13. Caius left nothing undone to frustrate my plans. — 14. He was within a little of (it was very little distant but that) reaching the city. — 15. It cannot be (*fierī*) but that you believe this. — 16. It was owing to you that I did not go.

Translate into Latin.

1. His speeches have so much wit, so many illustrations, so much elegance, that they almost seem to have been written in Attic style.

Digitized by Google

2. Will no virtue, therefore, ever be so respected by you[a] that it cannot be injured by suspicion?

3. There cannot be readily found [one] who can give better counsel to another (*alter*) than you; but at any rate no one will give better to you yourself.

4. If there are but few who love the nobility, is that our fault?

5. I cannot help (*praetereo*) sending to you daily.

6. He is so far from influencing my opinion, that I think he himself should be very much ashamed at having departed from his [own] opinion.

7. What shrine in Achaia, what place or sacred-grove, has been so [held] sacred that any image or ornament is left in it?

8. And yet I do not doubt that eloquence has always had great force.

9. How can it be doubted that the glory of military service brings much more of worthiness to win the consulship than [that] of civil law?

10. I could not help writing to you, and giving thanks.

11. Cæsar, fearing for his men, sent to Titus Sextius, the lieutenant, that he should lead his cohorts quickly out of the camp, in order that he might terrify the enemy *from pursuing* freely.

Epistle.

Cicero to his Atticus.

I had not doubted that I was to see you at Tarentum or Brundisium, and this had reference to many [points]; among them, that we might tarry in Epirus and use your counsel on other things. Since this has not happened, this also will be [ranked] in the great number of our misfortunes. Our route is to Asia, especially to Cyzicum. I commend my [family] to you. I sustain myself with difficulty, and wretchedly. Given April 17, near Tarentum (*Tarentinum*).

---

a. = "in your eyes," *tibi.*

Digitized by Google

Lesson 62.

Clauses of Characteristic.

A RELATIVE clause with the subjunctive is often used to express a Characteristic of the antecedent, containing more or less distinctly the idea of result. Thus —

They say a great deal which they scarcely understand, ***multa dīcunt quae vix intellegant.***

NOTE. — Here the indicative, **intellegunt**, would indicate things which they do not *in fact* understand. The use of the subjunctive implies that the things are so difficult, or the speakers so stupid, that they *cannot* understand them. Clauses which occur under this head are —

1. Those following general expressions of existence: § 320. *a* (G. 634; H. 501. i.);
2. Following **ūnus** and **sōlus**: id. *b* (G. 633; H. id. ii.);
3. Following Comparatives with **quam** (= TOO . . . TO): id. *c* (G. 313; H. id. iv.);
4. Of Restriction or Proviso, especially with **quod**: id. *d.* (G. 629. R.; H. 501. i. 3).
5. Of Cause or Hindrance: id. *e* (G. 636, 637; H. 519, 516. ii. 4);
6. Following **dīgnus**, etc. (= *worthy* TO . . .): id. *f* (G. 556. R.²; H. 501. iii.).

REMARK. — After general negative expressions, where the English uses BUT, **quīn** is often used for **quī** (**quod**, etc.) **nōn**: as,

There is no one but says this, ***nēmo est quīn hōc dīcat.***

Oral Exercises.

1. I am not worthy of receiving these honors. — 2. He is not fit to have those honors bestowed upon him (upon whom these honors should be bestowed). — 3. Cæsar is the only one to whom such honors are due. — 4. There are [some] who envy me. — 5. There were [some] who envied me. — 6. He is too shrewd to be deceived (shrewder than who can be deceived). — 7. Who is there that thinks Titus mad? — 8. Who was there that thought Marcus wise? — 9. There was nothing that you did not see. — 10. There was no one but thought you rash. —

Digitized by Google

11. Who is there but thinks us wise? — 12. You were the only one to receive such rewards.

Translate into Latin.

1. There will be many to whom you can properly give letters, who will gladly bring them to me.

2. Nor was there any one who cared for booty.

3. There were [some] at that time who believed that Marcus Crassus had not been ignorant of this design.

4. There is no *reason for* you to hurry.

5. On (*ex*) each side there are some who desire to contend.

6. This is the only place to which (*quō*) they may escape.

7. Who is there of those Greeks, who thinks that any one of us understands any thing?

8. There is no one of us but knows that you have no enmities with Sextus Roscius.

9. I have no *reason to* find fault with old age.

10. There is no one *but* understands that that republic is falling.

11. I ask you this, my Tiro, that you spare expense in nothing, *so far as* there is need for your health.

Lesson 63.

Infinitive Clauses.

[*Compare Lessons* 6, 24–26.]

THE following special forms of Infinitive Clause are liable to occur, especially in the extended use of Indirect Discourse: —

1. The Periphrastic Infinitive, formed by **fore** or **futūrum esse** with the Subjunctive, which is regular with verbs which have no supine stem, and is especially common after **spēro**: § 288. *f* (G. 240. 2; H. 544, with 1).

2. The Infinitive of Impersonal verbs, or the neuter of the Gerundive with **esse**, in such phrases as —

Digitized by Google

He saw that he must leap down, ***vīdit dēsiliendum esse*** (Direct, ***dēsiliendum est***).

A report came to the Senate that it had rained blood, ***sanguinem pluisse senātuī nūntiātum est.***

3. Rhetorical Questions in Indirect Discourse (see *Lesson* 27. *a*).

Oral Exercises.

1. I hope to be able. — 2. He says that we shall soon be willing. — 3. He said that he should not fear. — 4. I understand that fighting-is-going-on. — 5. I understand that fighting has been going on. — 6. I understood that fighting was going on. — 7. Remember that you are envied.[a] — 8. He says that fortune will again shine upon us. — 9. Do you think that [we] must fight? — 10. I do not think a rich [man] ought to be envied.

Translate into Latin.

1. They said they hoped that these designs which had been secretly entered into, contrary to the safety of the city and empire, would be brought to light.

2. All were of opinion that an addition would be enrolled in Italy for my legions and [those] of Bibulus.

3. You write that the physician is well esteemed (that it is well thought concerning, &c.).

4. He will say that he always wished to be asked, always to be entreated.

5. Why [he asked] did they urge[b] him, already an old man, and [one who had] passed through [all] labors and the rewards of labors?

6. Why, pray [he asked], did they fear, or why did they despair of their own valor or his (*ipse*) care?

7. If these things (*quae*) [he urged] were not to be borne in a king, or the son of a king, who would bear [them] in so many private persons? Let them see [to it], lest by forbidding

---

a. Verbs which govern the dative still govern the dative when used impersonally in the passive. — *b*. In all these sentences consider whether the question is real or rhetorical.

Digitized by Google

men to speak freely in the senate-house, they should even excite talk outside the senate-house. When they wished, let them test how much braver is[a] a sense-of-grief than self-seeking. For what had they done by[b] the people? Let them not place too much hope in others' fear!

8. Then Ahala Servilius, tribune of the soldiers, says that he has been silent so long, not because he was uncertain in opinion,[c] — for what good citizen separates his own counsels from the public [counsels]? — but because he chose that his colleagues should yield of their own accord to the authority of the Senate rather than suffer (imp. subj.) the power of the tribunes to be called upon against themselves.

Lesson 64.

Intermediate Clauses.

THE cases in which an intermediate relative clause must take the Subjunctive are the following: —

1. When the clause expresses the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer or his own in some other relation (*informal indirect discourse*);

2. When the clause is an integral part of a subjunctive or infinitive construction (*attraction*).

REMARK. — Many such clauses may be so regarded or not, as the speaker or writer chooses. Compare the following examples: —

1. **He first mentioned that of which I have just spoken** (direct statement), **which** (according to him) **had its origin in a presentiment of the future,** ***prīmum posuit eam*** (***causam***) ***dē quā modo dīxī, quae orta esset ex praesēnsiōne rērum futūrārum.***

2. **He says that he sees what** (as he alleges) **I see,** ***dīcit sē vidēre ea quae videam*** (***quae video*** would mean, what I see in fact).

---

a. Follow sequence of tenses. — *b.* = *through.* — *c.* Genitive.

Digitized by Google

3. **I come to see what you see,** ***venio ut videam ea quae tū videās*** (or ***vidēs***).

4. **For what can be so plain as that there is some Divinity, by whom these things are governed?** ***quid enim potest esse tam perspicuum quam esse aliquod nūmen, quō haec regantur?***

Oral Exercises.

1. He came that he might see the games, which then were going on. — 2. He came that he might see the games that were going on. — 3. I wish to cross the river, while you will stay in the camp. — 4. I wish to cross the river while you stay in the camp. — 5. I have received the letter which you sent. — 6. If I had not received the letter that you sent, I should have remained in the city. — 7. I have read the book which was given to me. — 8. I fear I shall not have an opportunity of reading the book that was given to me. — 9. He was prevented by his state-of-health from eating the oysters he bought.[a] — 10. I see that the man of whom you speak is present. — 11. He said that he came as soon as he saw me. — 12. We understand that the city which we seek is distant. — 13. They understood that the enemy whom they were pursuing were not far distant. — 14. He understood that the enemy whom he had defeated were retreating. — 15. He understood that the enemy, whom he had not seen, were approaching.

Translate into Latin.

1. Would that I may see that day when I may give you thanks because you have compelled me to live.

2. Not to know what happened before you were born, — this is to be alwâys a boy.

3. Men pitied not more the punishment than the crime by which they had deserved punishment.

4. I would rather he had not given him so great strength, than that he should resist him now [that he is grown] so strong.

---

a. Pluperfect.

Digitized by Google

5. I have sent Antonius to you, a brave man and especially trusted by me, that you might, if it should seem good to you, deliver to him the cohorts; in order that, while the time of year was suitable, I might be able to perform some operation.

6. Nature leads [us] to favor those who are entering upon the same perils which we have passed through.

7. What great and earnest orator, when he wished to make the judge angry with his adversary, ever hesitated on this account, — because he did not know what anger was, whether a fervor of the mind, or the desire of punishing a grievance?

8. Poets wish each his own work[a] to be examined by the public, in order that, if any thing shall be censured by many, it may be corrected.

9. I informed Deiotarus that there did not seem to be [any] reason why he should be absent from his kingdom.

10. I confess that I have zealously followed those [pursuits] from which true glory could arise.

11. I thought that I ought to lead the army through that district of Cappadocia which touched upon Cilicia.

12. He is of opinion that there are gods, because it is necessary that there should be some excellent nature, than which there is nothing better.

13. When we call the fruits "Ceres," and wine "Liber," we use, to be sure, a customary manner of speech; but do you think any one so insane as to believe that that which he eats is a god?

Lesson 65.

Dependent Conditional Clauses.

[*Compare Lesson* 27.]

In the case of Conditional Clauses in Indirect Discourse, the following points are to be observed: —

a. Follow the rule of Sequence of Tenses (*Lesson* 20), noticing

---

a. ***quisque*** following the reflexive: see *Lesson* 33.

Digitized by Google

also whether a verb of complete or incomplete action is required. Thus —

He promises to come if they wish, ***pollicētur sē ventūrum sī velint*** (Direct, ***veniam sī volētis***).

He had given orders that unless he should arrive, &c., ***ēdīxerat nisi advēnisset,*** etc. (Direct, ***nisi advēnero***).

b. In a condition *contrary to fact*, the dependent clause (*protasis*) remains unchanged, while the principal clause (*apodosis*) is represented by the future participle with **fuisse** (see *Lesson* 27. *b*). Thus —

I declare that if you had done this you would have received praise, ***āio sī haec fēcissēs laudem tē acceptūrum fuisse*** (Direct, ***sī haec fēcissēs laudem accēpissēs***).

He said he could if he had wished, ***dīxit sī voluisset futūrum fuisse ut posset*** (***sī voluisset potuisset***).

NOTE. — These two constructions — the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in future conditions after a past tense, and the future infinitive with **fuisse** in the apodosis of conditions contrary to fact — are among the most common subordinate constructions in Indirect Discourse. For the Subjunctive representing the Imperative, see *Lesson* 27.

Oral Exercises.

1. If you are well, I am glad. — 2. Be assured that if you are well, I am glad. — 3. I said that if he was well, I was glad. — 4. If you should do rightly, you would be praised. — 5. Remember that if you should do rightly, you would be praised. — 6. We reminded them that if they should do rightly, they would be praised. — 7. I told them that if they had done rightly, I should have praised them. — 8. We said that we should have wondered if it had been otherwise. — 9. We know that if you had been here, you would have approved our designs. — 10. They declared that if hostages had not been given, they should have laid waste the country.

Translate into Latin.

1. He understood that, if he should summon the legions to the province, they would contend in battle on the march in his absence (he being absent).

Digitized by Google

2. Now I wish that you would persuade yourself of this (*sīc*), that if reference is made to the Senate concerning these matters, I shall think that the highest praise is awarded to me, if you assent (*comprobo*) by your verdict [to] the honor paid me (*meus*).

3. He sees that, if the choice of accusing is transferred from boys of rank, whom he has hitherto eluded, to brave and respected men, he cannot lord it [any] longer in the trials.

4. They say that they wish to speak with Cæsar concerning most important matters, if an opportunity should be given them.

5. The same one says that, if there are not gods, there is nothing in all nature better than man; but that any man should think this — that there is nothing better than man — he judges is the greatest arrogance.

Epistle.

Cicero to his Atticus.

I am eagerly waiting for your advice. I fear that I am absent [at a time] when it were more honorable for me to be present: I dare not come without-special-reason. Of Antony's movements (*iter*) I hear somewhat (*nescio quid*) otherwise than as I wrote to you. Therefore, I wish you would explain every thing, and send me definite [tidings]. Of the rest, what shall I say to you? I burn with zeal for history — for your encouragement stimulates me incredibly — which indeed can neither be begun nor accomplished without your aid. Therefore we will consult together upon this at least. At present I wish you would write to me in whose consulship (abl. abs.) Caius Fannius, son of Marcus, was tribune of the people. I think (*videor mihi*) I have heard in the censorship of Publius Africanus and Lucius Mummius.

Dialogue.

THEOPROPIDES. Well, Tranio, what's going on?

TRANIO. The country-people are coming from the country: Philolaches will be here at once.

TH. By Pollux, he comes in good time for me. I am of opinion that this neighbor [of] ours is a bold and bad man.

TR. How so?

Digitized by Google

TH. Because he says he does not know you.

TR. Says not?

TH. And that you never gave him a [single] coin of money.

TR. Go away, — you are chaffing me, I am sure. He doesn't deny [it].

TH. What now?

TR. I know you're joking now; for he, I am sure, doesn't deny [it].

TH. Yes, indeed, by Pollux, he denies [it] up and down; and [says] that he didn't sell this house to Philolaches.

TR. Well, now, did he deny that money was given him, I beg [to know]?

TH. Nay, he promised to give me an oath, if I wished, that he neither sold this house, nor was money given him.

Lesson 66.

The English Potential.

THE POTENTIAL MOOD is a name often given, in English, to any form of a verb which is constructed with the aid of *may, can, must, might, could, would,* or *should.*

But these words are used with great variety and laxity, and give rise to many ambiguities. When used simply as auxiliaries, the verb they form is a genuine subjunctive; but they are very commonly principal verbs, in which case the verb depending upon them is in the infinitive.

A. — AS A PRINCIPAL VERB.

a. MAY denotes permission; Latin, **licet**: as,

You may (have leave to) **come,** ***licet tibi venīre.***

b. MIGHT has the same meaning, being the past tense of *may*; but by a peculiar idiom, when used in this way, it is followed by the Perfect Infinitive in English: as,

You might have come, ***licuit tibi venīre.***

Digitized by Google

REMARK. — *May* and *might* are also used to express *power* or *possibility*, and are then rendered by **possum**: as,

It may be so, *potest ita esse;*
He might have come, *potuit venīre.*

This last expression in English may mean either, *he had permission* (**licuit**), or *he had it in his power* (**potuit**).

Might, with Present Infinitive, is used in the apodosis of conditional sentences assumed to be false: as,

He might come (if circumstances were otherwise), ***posset venīre.***

c. CAN and COULD express *power*, and are translated by **possum**: as,

I can do this, *possum hōc facere;*

Could often, like *might*, takes the Perfect Infinitive to express past time, and uses the Present Infinitive in either member of a conditional sentence assumed as false: as,

I could do (or **could have done**) **this, *potuī hōc facere.***
I should do this if I could (but I cannot), ***hōc facerem sī possem.***

d. WOULD and SHOULD are occasionally used as principal verbs; *would*, like *will*, expresses a strong determination, and is rendered by **volo**: as,

He WILL **go, *vult īre;*** **He** WOULD **go, *voluit īre.***
He would if he could, *vellet sī posset.*
He might if he would, *posset sī vellet.*

Should is present, expressing obligation, and may be rendered by **oportet**: as,

He should not return, *nōn oportet eum redīre.*

Shall also is sometimes used in a similar way, in a future obligation, amounting almost to compulsion: as, *he shall go*; i.e., *I will make him go*. So with the Future Imperative: as,

Thou shalt not steal, *nē facito fūrtum.*

Digitized by Google

e. MUST and OUGHT are likewise principal verbs. *Must* is rendered by the gerundive, which is always passive: as,

We must wait for the consul, *cōnsul exspectandus est* [*nōbīs*].

We must fight (fighting must be done), *pūgnandum est.*

Ought is either **dēbeo** or the impersonal **oportet**; but for past time the English uses the Perfect Infinitive, just as for *might* and *could*: as,

He ought to have done this, *debuit hōc facere,* or *oportuit eum hōc facere.*

B. — AS AUXILIARIES.

a. MAY and MIGHT express purpose in final clauses, and are rendered by the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive: as,

He comes that he may see, *venit ut videat;*
He came that he might see, *vēnit ut vidēret.*

Might is also used in softened assertions: as,

One might believe, *crēāat quispiam.*

b. CAN and COULD are very rare in this use, but are occasionally the equivalents of a subjunctive of softened assertion: as,

I could wish, *velim* or *vellem;*
What can I say? *quid dīxerim.*

c. WOULD is used in indirect discourse, to express an action which is future in relation to a verb in past time on which it depends; it is rendered by the Future Infinitive: as,

He said that he would come or would have come, *dixit sē ventūrum esse* or *fuisse.*

d. SHOULD and WOULD are used in conditional sentences referring indistinctly to future time, — in the protasis, *should;* in the apodosis, *should* (like *shall*) for the first person, *would* (like *will*) for the second and third. In this use they are rendered by the Present Subjunctive: as,

If he should do so I should rejoice, *sī ita faciat gaudeam.*
You would rejoice, *gaudeās.*

Digitized by Google

Should have and *would have*, in the apodosis of conditions assumed as false, and rendered by the Pluperfect Subjunctive: as,

I should have come if I could, *vēnissem si potuissem.*

Should and *would*, like *might*, *can*, and *could*, may be used for implied conditions: as,

Why should I go? *quid eam?*
One would commend, *laudāveris.*

C. — RECAPITULATION.

a. MAY expresses —

1. Permission, — **licet**, with dative and infinitive.
2. Possibility, — **possum**, with infinitive.
3. Purpose, — **ut**, with present subjunctive.

b. MIGHT expresses —

1. Permission;
2. Possibility: — when followed by perfect infinitive in English, **licuit** or **potuit** with infinitive; when followed by present infinitive in English, **possem**, expressing possibility in a supposition assumed as false.
3. Purpose, — **ut** with imperfect subjunctive.
4. Softened assertion.

c. CAN and COULD express —

1. Power, — **possum** with infinitive.
2. Softened assertion.

d. WOULD expresses —

1. Determination, — **voluī** or **vellem.**
2. Future time in indirect discourse (the future infinitive depending on a past verb).
3. Apodosis of future time, — present subjunctive, second and third persons.
4. Apodosis of past time, condition assumed as false, — pluperfect subjunctive, second and third persons.
5. Softened assertion.

e. SHOULD expresses —

1. Obligation, — **oportet** or **decet.**
2. Protasis of future time, — present subjunctive.

Digitized by Google

3. Apodosis of future time, — present subjunctive, first person.

4. Apodosis of past time, false condition, — pluperfect subjunctive, first person.

5. Softened assertion.

Oral Exercises.

1. You may go. — 2. You must go. — 3. You ought to go. — 4. You might go if you were well. — 5. You might have gone. — 6. You might have gone if you had wished. — 7. Who would go into such (so great) perils? — 8. I wish Caius were present. — 9. I wish Caius might be present. — 10. What could I do? — 11. You could conquer if you would fight.

Translate into Latin.

1. They begged nothing else but that they might with their lips receive the last breath of their sons.

2. I ought to defend his safety no less than mine.

3. Here it might be recognized how much protection men have in firmness of soul.

4. You both refused what you ought not [to have refused], and received what you had-no-right [to receive].

5. The one does not dare to inform us why he is called a commander; the other must in a few days be ashamed to dare.

6. It was answered on the other side that Aulus Varro offered to come on the next day to a conference, and that he (the same one) would see how ambassadors might come in safety and declare what they wished.

Anecdotes.

1. The physician of Pyrrhus, king of the Epirots, came to Fabricius, general of the Romans, and promised to give poison to Pyrrhus, if a reward which should be worth his while should be paid him. But Fabricius, thinking that his victory had no need of such[a] a crime, informed-against the physician to the king, and by the merit of this good-faith drove[b] Pyrrhus to seek the friendship of the Romans.

---

a. Use the relative *quī* at the beginning of the sentence, — *quod facinus.* — *b.* Lit., *deserved that he drove.*

Digitized by Google

2. Themistocles, leader of the Athenians, when he saw that it was advantageous to the Greeks to contend in the straits of Salamis against the multitude of ships of Xerxes, and could not persuade his [fellow] citizens of this (*id*), brought it about by craft that the Greeks were forced by the barbarians to their own advantage (plur.). For, feigning treachery, he sent [a person] to Xerxes to disclose that his countrymen were deliberating about flight, and that matters would be harder for him, if he should attack the states one by one, by siege. And by this means he brought-it-to-pass, first that the army of the barbarians was kept from rest, since they were all night at their post of guard; in the next place, that his own men fought with fresh strength with the barbarians, [who were] worn out by watching, [and] in a narrow place, as he had wished, where Xerxes could not use the multitude in which he had the advantage.

Lesson 67.

Further Uses of the Relative.

In the use of Relative Clauses, the following points remain to be observed: —

a. The Relative often stands for a Demonstrative at the beginning of a sentence for the purpose of connecting the sentence closely with the preceding. In such cases it is often best to supply a conjunction in English. Thus —

But when Ariovistus had caught sight of them, *quōs cum Ariovistus cōnspexisset.*

b. The neuter **quod**, used adverbially, often begins a sentence, followed by **sī**, and may be best rendered *but*, *now*, &c.: as,

Now if the moon is a goddess, then the morning star, too, *quod sī Lūna dea est, ergō etiam Lūcifer.*

c. When a relative clause has another subordinate clause depending upon it, the Relative may stand in that clause, and be understood in its own: as,

Digitized by Google

I had been one who, although it was permitted me to receive greater fruits, did not hesitate, *is fueram, cui cum licēret mājōrēs fructūs capere, nōn dubitāverim* (for *quī, cum mihi licēret*).

Translate into Latin.

1. These two points remain to me from your subdivision. And concerning *these*, if it seems [good] to you, I think we should discuss more thoroughly.

2. There are many monuments of your mercy, but chiefly the unharmed-condition (plur.) of those to whom you have given safety. And if *these things* are glorious in private persons, much more shall they be recounted in [regard to] kings.

3. *Now* if I pushed myself in that direction, I should certainly find at once some way of resisting.

4. I attempted-to-satisfy (imperf.) the people by purchase, *and if this had been arranged* carefully, I thought the rabble of the city could be withdrawn, and the solitude of Italy made-populous.

5. What shall I say of myself, *who* cannot be relieved, although (*ut*) every thing (*omnia*) should happen to me which I wish?

6. He was informed that all the Belgians, *whom* we had shown to be the third part of Gaul, were conspiring against the Roman people.

7. Therefore but-few come to old age, [but] if this (*quod*) did not so happen, we should live[a] both better and more prudently.

8. That is an old law of the genuine and true friendship which now for a long time I have had with him, that friends always wish the same thing; nor is there any surer bond of friendship than the harmony and union of plans and wills.

9. As to the people, — he who either envies or favors is always a partial judge of dignity.

10. He forbade a publican or the slave of a publican to be

---

a. Impersonal.

Digitized by Google

in-the-town (*ibi*) in which he himself was, or to which he was coming.

11. I entreated Claudia, your wife, and your sister Mucia, to deter him from that act of injustice.

12. I came to Brundisium, April 17. On that day your boys gave me a letter from you, and other boys the third day after that day (gen.) brought me another letter.

13. As to your calling (*quod vocās*) me to life, you accomplish one thing, that I withhold my hands from myself; the other thing you cannot, that I should not repent our decision and [my] life.

14. Each ought to be contented with that [amount] of time which is given to him for living.

Lesson 68.

Supplementary Exercises.

1. — Epistle.

I WRITE you this as I recline in the very villa of Scipio Africanus, after adoring his shades and the casket which I suspect to be the tomb of the great (*tantus*) man. His soul indeed, I am persuaded, has returned into heaven, from which it was; not because he led great armies, — for these the mad Cambyses also had, — but on account of his excellent moderation and piety, more admirable in him when he left his country than when he defended it: either Scipio must (*dēbeo*) be wanting to Rome, or Rome without liberty. "In nothing," he said, "do I wish to detract from the laws and institutions. Let right be equal among all citizens. Make use of my services without me, my country. I have been to thee a cause of liberty, I will be also a proof [of it]. I go forth, if I have grown more than is well for thee."

Why should I not admire this greatness of mind, with which he departed into voluntary exile, and disburdened the state? Therefore great pleasure came upon me as I reflected-on Scipio's customs and ours: in this corner that dread of Carthage, to whom Rome owes that (*quod*) she was captured only once,

Digitized by Google

washed his body, weary with rustic labors. For he exercised himself with labor, and, as the ancient[a] custom was, he in person (*ipse*) subdued the earth.

2. — Anecdote.

So many things are going on at Rome, that those which take place in the provinces are scarcely heard of. I do not fear that I shall seem to arrogate any thing to myself, if I speak of my quæstorship. For however brilliant it was, nevertheless I think that I have since held the greatest commands in such a way (I have been such (*is*) in the greatest, &c.), that there is not so much glory to be sought from the reputation of my quæstorship. But yet I am not afraid that any one will dare to say that anyone's quæstorship in Sicily was either more renowned or more popular. At that time, I thought that men talked of nothing else at Rome but of my quæstorship. Therefore I came away with this hope, that I thought the Roman people would offer every thing to me of their own accord. But when by chance in those days, for the sake of taking a journey, on my way (*dūcēdēns*) from the province, I had come by chance to Putcoli, when very many fashionable men are accustomed to be in that neighborhood (*loca*), I almost lost my balance, when some one had asked me on what day I had gone from Rome, and whether there was any thing new. When I had answered him[b] that I was on my way from my province, "Yes, to be sure, by Hercules," says he, "from Africa, as I think." Already rather-offended, I say to him disdainfully: "No, indeed; from Sicily." Then one, as [one] who knew every thing, said, "How, don't you know that he was quæstor at Syracuse?" In-brief, I left off being offended, and pretended that I was one of those who had come to the baths.

3. — Anecdote.

Thence they came to Sidon, a city renowned for [its] antiquity and the fame of its founders. Hephæstion was permitted to establish as king [the one] of the Sidonians whom he should

a. to the ancients. — b. Lesson 58.

Digitized by Google

judge most worthy of that rank. The hosts of Hephæstion were young men distinguished among their countrymen; who, when an opportunity of reigning was offered them (*sibi*), said that no one, according to the custom of the country, was admitted to that rank, unless born of royal stock. And they decide that no one is preferable to (*potior quam*) a certain Abdalonymus,[a] connected with the royal stock, but on account of poverty cultivating a garden in the suburbs with slender profit. The cause of his[b] poverty was honesty; and, intent upon his daily work, he did not hear the uproar of arms which had shaken all Asia.

Suddenly then they entered his garden with the insignia of royal apparel. Then, after saluting him[c] king, one of them said: "You must exchange that filth for this suit of raiment which you see in my hands. Take the spirit of a king, and carry that self-restraint of yours into that fortune of which you are worthy. And when you sit upon the royal throne, master of the life and death of all citizens, do not forget this condition in which — nay, by Hercules, on account of which — you receive the royalty."

The king ordered him straightway to be admitted, and looking upon him for a long time, said: "The bearing of your body is not inconsistent with the fame of your race; but I should like to know by what patience you have endured poverty." Then he said, "May I be able to endure royalty with the same temper! These hands sufficed for my needs. To him who had nothing (part.), nothing was wanting."

4. — Epistle.

Caius Pliny to his Septicius Clarus.

Ho, you promise [to come] to dinner, and don't[d] come. Judgment shall be pronounced, — you shall pay costs to a penny, and that not (*nec id*) trifling. There were prepared a head-of-lettuce apiece, three snails apiece, two eggs apiece, olives, beets, gourds, onions, a thousand other things no less

---

a. After *quam* in indirect discourse the construction of the Accusative with the Infinitive is usually continued. — *b.* = to him. — *c.* = he having been saluted. — *d.* And not, ***neque***.

Digitized by Google

elegant. You would have heard comedians or a reader or a harper or — such (*quae*) [is] my liberality — all [of these]. But you preferred oysters, tripe, sea-urchins, and the Cadiz-beauties[a] with nobody-knows-who (*nescio quis*). You shall suffer punishment — I don't say what. You have done rudely; you have grudged — I am inclined to think (*nescio an*) yourself — at any rate me, but yet yourself too. How much we should have sported, laughed, studied! You can dine more showily with many, nowhere more gaily, more simply, freer-from-restraint. In fine, make-a-trial, and unless hereafter you excuse yourself rather to others, excuse [yourself] to me always. Farewell.

Lesson 69.

Comparative Forms of Speech.

NOTE. — The examples below are chiefly taken (by permission) from the list of "Classified Latin Idioms" prepared by Professor L. S. POTWIN, of Western Reserve College, Hudson, O. They may be used, at the pleasure of the teacher, in the review of points already considered, or for practice in the change of forms of expression from one language to the other. The references are to the foregoing Lessons, where the forms are more fully illustrated.

Differences in the forms of expression found in Latin and English may be classified as follows: —

I. — DIFFERENCES IN THE USE OF WORDS.

In seeking the equivalent in Latin of English words or phrases, the most important points to be noted are the following: —

1. The more frequent use of Dual forms in Latin: as **uter, alter, neuter,** and the employment of the comparative in many cases where the superlative is found in English: as,

The augury came to Remus first (before Romulus), *priōrī Remō augurium vēnit.*

---

a. Gāditānae.

Digitized by Google

2. The choice of concrete for abstract words: as,

I do not fear a bad man's anger, *improbum īrātum nōn metuo.*

(See further illustrations in A. & G.'s "Latin Composition," pp. 122, 123.)

3. Use of two nouns for adjective and noun (*hendiadys*): as,

An eye-witness, *spectātor et testis.*

A shameful disaster, *īgnōminia et calamitās* (id. p. 124).

4. Use of the Adjective for other forms of speech: as,

Fear of the enemy, *metus hostīlis.*

He was the first to do it, *prīmus hōc fēcit.*

He spoke briefly, *pauca locūtus est.*

To tell many lies, *multa mentirī.*

5. The double Comparative in such phrases as —

More nice than wise, *subtīlior quam sapientior.*

The enemy behaved with more fury than discretion, *ferōcius quam cōnsultius rem hostēs gerēbant.*

6. Use of **atque** (**āc**) after words of likeness: as,

We ought to love our friends equally with ourselves, *amīcōs aequē āc nōsmetipsōs dīligere dēbēmus.*

7. Verbal adjective to be translated by Participle: as,

A rolling stone; a living spring; *saxum volūbile; fōns vīvus.*

8. Precision in the use of Pronouns, especially of the Reflexive and Intensive: *Lesson* 49.

9. Use of Demonstratives, especially **ipse**, **īdem**: Gr. § 195.

10. The Relative for Demonstrative and Connective: *Lesson* 50. Compare the following: —

Do nothing as to which you are in doubt whether it is right or wrong, *nihil ēgeris quod dubitās aequum sit an inīquum.*

11. Indefinite Pronouns (often taking the place of the Article in English): *Lesson* 52.

12. Form of Reply (for "yes" or "no"): *Lesson* 3.

13. Certain uses of Negatives (compare *Lesson* 36. *d*): as,

No poet or orator ever said that, *nēmo umquam neque poēta neque ōrātor illud dīxit.*

Flattery is unworthy not only of a friend but (not) even of a free man, *adsentātio nōn modo amīcō sed nē līberō quidem dīgna est.*

He says he was not there, *negat sē adfuisse.*

He will not come, *vereor ut veniat.*

Digitized by Google

II. — Differences of Construction.

Differences of syntax may be classified as (*a*) Case-Constructions, (*b*) Verb-Constructions, (*c*) Dependent Constructions.

a. **Case-Constructions.** — The use of Cases, in agreement or government, has been fully illustrated in the foregoing Lessons, and is supposed to be familiar. Of those illustrating peculiarities in the use of Latin, the most important to be noticed are the following: —

14. The Objective Genitive, as corresponding with the use of various prepositions in English (*Lesson* 38. 4).

15. The Partitive Genitive, in such phrases as the following: —

What is the trouble? *quid negōtiī est?*
Considerable time; no delay, *aliquantum temporis; nihil morae.*

16. Compare the following cases of Agreement: —

How many are there of you? *quot estis?*
I hear threats, none of which I fear, *minās audio quās nūllās timeo.*

17. The Predicate Genitive in such phrases as —

It is [the part] of a judge, *jūdicis est.*
It is (*or*, it would be) wise to reflect, *sapientis est cōgitāre* (*Lesson* 31. 2).

18. Dative of Service (*predicate dative*): see *Lesson* 15. 2.

19. Ablative Absolute: *Lesson* 7. *b.*

20. Locative Constructions: *Lessons* 17, 46.

21. Idiomatic use of certain prepositions to express location or direction: as,

I begin with this, *ab hōc ordior.*
A shout was heard on that side, *clāmor ab illā parte audītus est.*
In front; on the flank; in the rear, *ā fronte, ā latere, ā tergō.*

22. Compare the following uses of Prepositions: —

Of a sudden, *ex improvīsō.*
To put money into a box, *pecūniam in arcā pōnere.*
It is all over with the army, *actum est dē exercitū.*
To your satisfaction, *ex tuā sententiā.*
So much for this, *dē hāc rē hāctenus.*
I desire it with all my heart, *ex animō hōc cupio.*
They differ widely from one another, *multum inter sē differunt.*

Digitized by Google

Want increases from day to day, *inopia in diēs crēscit.*
One war rose after another, *aliud ex aliō bellum ortum est.*
It is for your interest, *in rem tuam est.*
Our ships rode at anchor, *nōstrae nāvēs in ancorīs cōnstitērunt.*
While at play; at leisure, *inter lūdendum, per ōtium.*
He was informed both by the envoys and by letter, *et ā lēgātīs et per litterās certior factus est.*

23. Attraction in the Relative clause: as,

He sent the most faithful slave he had, *servum quem fidēlissimum habēbat mīsit.*
Thebes, which was the head of Bœotia, *Thēbae, quod caput Boeōtiae erat.*

b. **Verb-Constructions.** — The syntax of Moods and Tenses has been exhibited in *Lessons* 19, 20, 32, 33; and of Participles, &c., in *Lessons* 34, 35. Among special or idiomatic uses are to be noticed —

24. Reflexive meaning of the Passive (representing in Latin the Greek *middle voice*): as,

He buckles on his sword, *gladium cingitur* (compare *frātrī gladium cingit*).

25. Use of Impersonal expressions: *Lesson* 30.

26. Precision in the use of Tenses, as in the following: —

I have been long (and still am) desiring, *jam prīdem cupio.*
I might have gone, [*mihi*] *īre licuit* (see *Lesson* 66).
I will do it if I can, *faciam sī potero* (see *Lesson* 32).

27. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions: *Lesson* 28 (strictly, a dependent construction).

28. Tenses of the Subjunctive in expressions of Wish: *Lesson* 33. 1; and in such phrases as,

I should like to do this, *hōc facere velim.*
I would rather you were here, *māllem adessēs.*
I wish he had done it, *vellem hōc fēcisset.*

29. The Participle for the Infinitive in description (§ 292. *e*): as,

I heard the birds sing, *avēs canentēs audīvī.*
Did you see the house fall? *domumne ruentem vīdistī?*

30. Participle in agreement, for coördinate or descriptive phrase: see *Lesson* 34. For example,

He took the bridge and burned it, *pontem captum incendit.*
He called the soldiers and showed them Italy, *mīlitibus* (dat.) *vocātīs Italiam ostendit.*

Digitized by Google

I want men that will not give way before the enemy, *quaero mīlitēs hostibus nōn cessūrōs.*

I know nothing but what I have heard, *nihil habeo praeter audītum.*

One who reckons pain the greatest evil cannot be brave, *dolōrem summum malum jūdicāns fortis esse nōn potest.*

Obey no one unless [he be] a teacher or lawful ruler, *nēminī pārēto nisi aut docentī aut lēgitimē imperantī.*

31. Certain Gerundive constructions: *Lesson* 18, Remarks 1 and 2. Examples are —

I meet no one without thanking him, *nēminem convenio quīn eī grātiās agam.*

He praises the poets without understanding them, *poētās laudat, neque (eōs) intellegit.*

I have no doubt about your being well, *nihil dubito quīn valeās.*

Nothing prevents his doing it, *nihil obstat quōminus id faciat.*

He was on the point of being killed, *in eō erat ut interficerētur.*

Far from being (instead of being) silent, you cry out, *tantum abest ut taceās ut clāmēs (clāmās cum tacēre dēbeās).*

32. Omission of the Verb in certain phrases: as,

They do nothing but laugh, *nihil aliud quam rīdent.*

Compare the rhetorical omission of the copula, frequent in Livy and Tacitus.

33. Preference of personal forms in the passive of Indirect Discourse: as,

It is said that Plato lived to be an old man, *Plato usque ad senectūtem vīxisse dīcitur.*

It seems we have done something, *aliquid, ut videmur, effēcimus.*

34. Clause (expressed or implied) after a Comparative: as,

He is too kind to get angry, *clēmentior est quam ut (quī) īrāscī possit.*

35. Change of subject and predicate in second member of a sentence: as,

Nothing was doing except to prepare for war, *neque aliud agēbātur quam bellum apparābātur.*

c. **Subordinate Constructions.** — These have been abundantly treated under the heads Indirect Discourse (*Lessons* 24–29) and Subordinate Clauses (*Lessons* 53–65).

36. The structure of Latin is especially characterized by the preference of subordinate to independent or coördinate expressions, as may be seen in the following example: —

He left his house and wandered about alone, *cum domum relīquisset (domō relictā) sōlus vagātus est* (compare under 30, above).

Digitized by Google

37. This is seen more distinctly by comparing the involved construction of a Latin period with the form in which it would be more natural to express the same idea in English. Thus —

I knew they were on fire with rage and guilt. I saw that they had stayed behind at Rome, and were in the midst of us. And so I spent all my days and nights in feeling out and watching what they were doing, what they were attempting.

Atque ego, ut vīdī quōs maximō furōre et scelere esse inflammātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbīscum esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eō omnēs diēs noctēsque cōnsumpsī, ut quid agerent, quid mōlīrentur, sentīrem ac vidērem.

III. — Differences of Idiom.

38. The following examples will serve to illustrate some of the more common differences of idiom, or forms of expression, which should be borne in mind in translating from either language into the other. The list might be extended indefinitely.

You, your brother, and I, *ego et tū et frāter tuus.*
To demand satisfaction; to make restitution, *rēs repetere; rēs reddere.*
To keep a promise, *fidem servāre;* to break one's word, *fidem fallere.*
It is worth the while, *operae pretium est.*
He takes pains to understand, *dat operam ut intellegat.*
Let me know; see that you write me, *fac sciam; fac ad mē scrībās.*
What does this mean? *quid hōc sibi vult?*
I don't care a straw for your promise, *prōmissum tuum nōn flocci facio.*
To be condemned to death, *capitis damnārī.*
The thing in question, *id dē quō agitur.*
So it is (the case stands thus), *ita rēs sē habet.*
They desire revolution, *novās rēs cupiunt,* "*novīs rēbus student.*"
They refreshed themselves, *corpora cūrābant* (see 2, above).
He is intimate with the Scipios, *Scipiōnibus familiāriter ūtitur.*
Richly endowed with knowledge, *scientiā auctus.*
Promoted to honors, *honōribus* (abl.) *auctus.*
To undergo punishment; to receive a reward, *poenā afficī; praemiō afficī.*
I will not lie, as they do, *nōn mentiar ut istī solent.*
They were pinched with the cold, *torridī erant frīgore.*
In brief; to be brief, *quid multa? quid plūra?*
Heaven forbid! *Dī meliōra!* What's the matter? *quorsus haec?*
They burst into tears, *in lacrimās effūsī sunt.*
Not to put too fine a point on it, *ne nimis subtiliter dīcam.*
I allow myself to be imposed upon, *verba mihi darī patior.*

Digitized by Google

VOCABULARY.

NOTE. — For Numerals and Pronouns, see Grammar, §§ 94–105.

Regular verbs, of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, are simply marked. Of irregular verbs (except compounds of *fero* and *eo*), and all of the third conjugation (except compounds of *facio*), the several stems are given. Of nouns the genitive case is given, as indicating the declension.

Phrases and groups of words are given either under the first word, or under the verb or noun or both, contained in it.

Long vowels are marked, except the final **i**, **o**, and **u** of inflection, which may be assumed as long.

Contractions: (adj.), adjective; (n.), noun; (v.), verb; (adv.), adverb; (conj), conjunction; (prep.), preposition.

A.

A, usually not expressed; **a certain,** *quīdam, quaedam, quoddam.*

abdicate, *abdico*[1] (*abdic. magistrātum,* or *abd. sē magistrātu*).

able (to be), *possum, posse, potui.*

abode, *domicilium, i,* N.; *habitātio, ōnis,* F.

about (adv.), *circiter, ferē.*

about (prep.), *dē;* — to do, &c., fut. part.

above (prep.), *suprā* (accus.).

abroad, *forīs* (place where); *forās* (whither).

absent, *absēns, ntis;* to be —, *absum.*

absolutely, *sānē.*

abundance, *cōpia, ae,* F.

abuse, *abūtor,*[3] *abūs-* (abl.); = revile, *male dīco* (dat.).

accept, *capio,*[3] *cēpi, capt-; accipio;* (friendship), *sequor,*[3] *secūt-.*

accident, *cāsus, ēventus, ūs,* M.

accomplish, *cōnficio,*[3] *fēci, fectum; efficio;* (some special aim), *adsequor,*[3] *secūtus.*

accord; of one's own —, *sponte* (generally with possessive); *ultro.*

according to, ablative case.

account; on this —, *eō, ob hanc causam;* on — of, *ob, propter* (acc.), *causā,* with gen.; (abl.) make no —, *nihili facio* (acc.).

accursed, *scelestus, a, um.*

accuse, *accūso,*[1] *arguo,*[3] *ī, ūt-.*

accuser, *accūsātor, ōris,* M.

accustomed, to be, *soleo,*[2] *solitus; adsuēvi* (perf. of *adsuēsco*); imperf. of verb.

Acheron, *Acherūns, untis,* M.

acorn, *glāns, dis,* F.

acquit, *lībero.*[1]

acre, *jugerum, i,* N. (sometimes gen. *jugeris;* pl. generally 3d decl.; really, about half an acre).

across, *trāns* (acc.).

Digitized by Google

act (v.), *facio*,[3] *fēci, fact-*.
act (n.), *factum, i*; — of injustice, *injūria, ae*; royal —, *rēgium, i* (neut. adj.).
action, *factum, i*, N.
adapt, *accommodo*.[1]
add, *addo*,[3] *didi, dit-*; to be added, *accēdo*,[3] *cessi, cess-*.
addition, *supplēmentum*, N.
administer, *gero*,[3] *gessi, gest-*.
admirable, *admīrābilis, e*.
admiration, *admīrātio, ōnis*, F.
admire, *mīror, admīror*.[1]
admit, *admitto*,[3] *mīsi, miss-*; (to one's self), *recipio*,[3] *cēpi, cept-*.
admonish, *moneo*,[2] *admoneo*.[2]
adore, *adōro*.[1]
adorn, *orno, adorno*.[1]
advance (intr. v.), *prōgredior*,[3] *gress-*; (tr. v.), *augeo*,[2] *auxi, auct-*.
advantage, *ūtilitās, tātis*, F.
advantageous, *ūtilis, e*; to be —, *prōsum* (dat.).
adversary, *adversārius, i*, M.
advice, *cōnsilium, i*, N.; *auctōritās, tātis*, F.
advise, *moneo*,[2] *ui, it-*.
ædileship, *aedīlitās, tātis*, F.
Æneas, *Aenēās, ae, ān, ā*.
affability, *cōmitās, tātis*, F.
affair, or **affairs,** *rēs, rēi*, F.
afraid, to be, *vereor*,[2] *veritus*.
after (prep.), *post* (acc.); also, abl. abs.
after (conj.), *postquam*.
after (adj.), *posterus*.
afterwards, *posteā*.
again, *rursus, etiam, iterum*; — and —, *etiam atque etiam*.
against, *contrā, adversus* (acc.).
age, *aetās, tātis*, F.; old —, *senectūs, tūtis*, F.
aged, *grandaevus, a, um*.
agent, *minister, tri*, M.
ago, *abhinc*.
agreeable, *jūcundus, a, um*.
agreed (it is well —), *cōnstat*.
aid (v.), *adjuvo*,[1] *jūvi, jūt-* (acc.)
aid (n.), *auxilium, adjūmentum, i*, N.; *opis*, F. (gen. case); come to — of, *subvenio*,[4] *vēni, vent-* (dat.).
alarmed, *territus, a, um*; to be —, *trepido*.[1]
Alban, *Albānus, a, um*.
all, *omnis, e*; *tōtus, a, um*; (gen. *īus*); at —, *omnīnō*; not at —, *minimē, nihil*; — of a sudden, *dērepente*.
alliance, *conjunctio, ōnis*, F.
allowed, it is —, *licet, uit, itum*.
ally, *socius, i*, M.
almost, *paene, prope*.
alone, *sōlus, a, um* (gen. *īus*).
along with, *ūnā cum* (abl.).
already, *jam*.
also, *et, etiam, quoque*; but —, *tum* (following *cum*...).
altar, *āra, ae*, F.
although, *quamquam, etsī, cum, quamvīs, ut*.
altogether, *omnīnō*.
always, *semper*.
am, see **be**.
ambassador, *lēgātus, i*, M.
among, *inter* (acc.); *in* (abl.).
ancestors, *mājōrēs, um* (pl. adj.).
anchor, *ancora, ae*, F.
ancient, *antīquus, priscus, pristinus, a, um*.
and, *et, atque, āc, -que*; — not, *neque*.
anger, *īra, īrācundia, ae*, F.
angry, *īrātus* (dat.); to be —, *īrāscor*,[3] *īrāt-* (dat.).

Digitized by Google

animal, *animal, ālis,* N.
announce, *nūntio, renūntio.*[1]
another, *alius;* (of two), *alter, a, um* (gen. *ius*); one —, *inter sē.*
answer (v.), *or* make an —, *respondeo,*[2] *di, sum.*
answer (n.), *rēspōnsum, i,* N.
ant, *formīca, ae,* F.
antiquity, *vetustās, tātis,* F.; antiquities, *rēs antīquae* (plur.).
Antony, *Antōnius, ī,* M.
anvil, *incūs, ūdis,* F.
anxiety, *sollicitūdo, dinis,* F.
any, *ūllus, a, um* (gen. *ius*); substantive, *quisquam;* anybody (emphatic), *quīvīs, quaevīs;* interrog. *numquis* (see *Less.* 52).
apiece, distributive numeral.
apparel, *vestis, is,* F.; *vestītus, ūs,* M.
appear, *videor,*[2] *vīsus; appāreo.*[2]
appearance, *speciēs, ēi,* F.
apple, *pōmum, ī,* N.
approach, *accēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-* (*in* w. acc.); *aggredior,*[3] *gress-* (*ad* w. acc.), *appropinquo.*[1]
appropriate, *proprius, a, um.*
approve, *probo, comprobo.*[1]
April, *aprīlis, e* (adj.).
are, *sumus, estis, sunt;* a sign of the present.
argument, *argūmentum, i,* N.; *ōrātio, ōnis,* F.
arise, *nāscor,*[3] *nātus.*
arms, *arma, ōrum* (N. pl.).
army, *exercitus, ūs,* M.; (in line of battle), *aciēs, iēi,* F.
Arpinatian, *Arpīnās, ātis.*
arrange, *cōnstituo,*[3] *tui, tūt-; dispōno,*[3] *sui, situm.*
arrangement, *dispositio, ōnis,* F.
arrival, *adventus, ūs,* M.
arrive, *pervenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-.*
arrogance, *adrogantia, ae,* F.
arrogate, *adrogo.*[1]
arrow, *sagitta, ae,* F.
art, *ars, artis,* F.
as (a piece of money), *ās, assis,* M.
as, *ut, quasi, prō* (abl.), *id quod;* noun in appos.; as if, *quasi, tamquam;* as is due, *or* as is worthy, *prō* (abl.); as many as, *quot;* as often as, *totiēs, quotiēs; quotiēscumque;* as to, *quod pertinet ad* (acc.); as yet, *adhūc;* as...as, *tam...quam;* such...as, *tālis...quālis* (see *quantus, quot, quotiēs*).
ascertain, *cōgnōsco,*[3] *nōvi, nit-.*
ashamed, usually with *pudet* (impers.); as, I am ashamed, *mē pudet* (gen. or infin.).
aside (in compos.), *sē-;* as, *sēvoco,*[1] *to call aside.*
ask, *ōro, rogo*[1] (two accus.); *peto,*[3] *tīvi, tīt-* (person expressed by *ab* w. abl.); *quaero,*[3] *quaesīvi, quaesīt-* (person expressed by *ab, dē,* or *ex* w. abl.).
ass, *asinus, i,* M.
assault, *grassor*[1] (*in* w. acc.).
assemble (intr.), *convenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-.*
assembly, *conventus, ūs,* M.; *contio, ōnis,* F.; (for voting), *comitia, ōrum* (N. pl.).
assent, *assentior,*[4] *sēns-.*
assert, *praedico.*[1]
assistance, *adjūmentum, i,* N.
assured, be, *scīto.*
at, *ad* (acc.), *in* (abl.); — having, &c. (to express a cause alleged), *quod;* — any rate, *certē;* — most, *summum;* — some time, *aliquando;* — the top of his voice, *maximum;*

Digitized by Google

locative, = near, *ad*; = on account of, on occasion of, *ad* (acc.); — last, *dēmum*; — length, *tandem*.

Athenian, *Athēniēnsis, e.*

Athens, *Athēnae, ārum,* F.

attack (v.), *aggredior,*[3] *gress-*; *oppūgno.*[1]

attack (n.), *impetus, ūs,* M.

attempt (v.), *cōnor.*[1]

attempt (n.), *cōnātus, ūs,* M.

attend, *attendo,*[3] *ndi, nt-.*

attention, *studium, i,* N.; give — to, *studeo,*[2] *dui* (dat.); to give —, *operam dare.*

Attic, *Atticus, a, um.*

audacity, *audācia, ae,* F.; *audācitās, ātis,* F.

August, *sextīlis, e* (adj.).

authority, *auctōritās, ātis,* F.

avarice, *avāritia, ae,* F.

avenge, *persequor,*[3] *secūt-.*

averse, *remōtus* (*ab* w. abl.)

avoid, *vīto, fugito.*[1]

award, *tribuo,*[3] *bui, būt-.*

axle, *axis, is,* M.

B.

back (n.), *tergum, ī,* N.

back (adv.), *retro, re-* (in compos., as, *re-fero*).

bad, *malus, a, um*; — people, *improbī.*

bag, *saccus, i,* M.

balance, to lose one's, *concido,*[3] *cidi.*

bald, *calvus, a, um.*

band (of robbers), *caterva, ae,* F.

barbarian, *barbarus, a, um.*

barbarous (in character), *immānis, e.*

bark (v.), *lātro.*[1]

bark (n.), *cortex, icis,* M.

base (adj.), *turpis, e.*

basket, *corbis, is*; *fiscella, ae,* F.

baths, *aquae, ārum,* F.

battle, *proelium, i,* N.; *pūgna, ae,* F.; line of —, *aciēs, iēi,* F.

be, *esse* (*sum, fui, futūrus*); — **off,** *abscēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-*; — **on** hand (*or* with), *adsum* (dat.); — quiet, *taceo*[2]; — understood (of a word omitted in a sentence), *dēsum.*

beam, *trabs, trabis,* F.

bear (v.), *fero, ferre, tuli, lāt-*; (suffer), *patior,*[3] *passus.*

bear (n.), *ursus, ī,* M.; *ursa, ae,* F.

beard, *barba, ae,* F.; bearded, *barbātus, ī.*

bearing, *habitus, ūs,* M.

beast, *bestia, ae,* F.

beat, *verbero*[1]; (in battle), *vinco,*[3] *vīci, vict-.*

beautiful, *pulcher, cra, crum.*

beauty, *pulcritūdo, inis,* F.; *decor, ōris,* M.

because, *quia, quod.*

become, *fīo, fieri, fact-*; (becoming to), *decet* (acc.); — a boy again, *repuerāsco.*[3]

bed, *lectus, i,* M.; to go to —, *abeo cubitum.*

bee, *apis, is,* F.

beet, *bētāceus, i,* M.

befit, *convenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-* (dat.).

before (prep.), *ante* (acc.).

before (conj.), *antequam, priusquam.*

before (adv.), *anteā, ante.*

beg, *ōro*[1] (two acc.); *peto,*[3] *tīvi, tīt-* (*ab* w. abl.); *quaero,*[3] *sīvi, sīt-* (prep. w. abl.); — to know, *obsecro.*[1]

begin, *incipio,*[3] *cēpi, cept-*; *īnstituo,*[3] *tui, tūt-*; (perf.), *coepi.*

Digitized by Google

beginning, *initium*, ī, N.; in the — of summer, *prīmā aestāte.*
behalf, in — of, *ob* (acc.); *prō* (abl.).
behind, *post* (acc.).
behold, *specto.*[1]
Belgians, *Belgae, ārum.*
believe, *crēdo,*[3] *didi, dit-* (dat. of person, acc. of thing).
belong, *proprius esse* (dat. or gen.).
benefit (v.), *prōsum* (dat.).
benefit (n.), *beneficium, i,* N.
berry, *bacca, ae,* F.
beseech, *peto,*[3] *tīvi, tīt-* (*ab* w. abl.), *ōro,*[1] *implōro.*[1]
besides (prep.), *praeter* (acc.).
besides (adv.), *etiam.*
besiege, *obsideo,*[2] *sēdi, sess-; oppūgno.*[1]
best, *optimus.*
bestow, *cōnfero* (dat. or *in* w. acc.); *impertio*[4] (dat.); —time, or attention, *adhibeo*[2] (*in* w. acc.).
betake one's self, *se cōnferre* (*ad* w. acc.).
betray, *prōdo,*[3] *didi, dit-.*
betrothed, *spōnsus,* ī, M.; *spōnsa, ae,* F.
better, *melior, us;* — prepared, *parātior, us.*
between (adj.), *medius, a, um.*
between (prep.), *inter* (acc.).
beware, *caveo,*[2] *cāvi, caut-.*
beyond, *praeter* (acc.).
bid, *jubeo,*[2] *jussi, juss-.*
bill (beak), *rōstrum, i,* N.
bind, *restringo* (*astringo*[3]), *nxi, strict-; necto,*[3] *xui, xum; vincio,*[4] *nxi, nctum.*
bird, *avis, is,* F.
bite, *mordeo,*[2] *momordi, mors-.*
bitter, *acerbus, a, um.*
bitterness, *acerbitās, ātis,* F.
Bituriges, *Biturigēs, gum.*
black, *niger, gra; āter, tra, trum.*
blame (v.), *culpo,*[1] *vitupero,*[1] *reprehendo,*[3] *di, sum.*
blame (n.), *culpa, ae,* F.
blessing, *bonum,* ī, N.
blind, *caecus, a, um.*
blood, *sanguis, inis,* M.; when shed, *cruor, ōris,* M.
blooming, *flōrēns, tis.*
blossom, *flōs, flōris,* M.
blow (v.), *flō.*[1]
blow (n.), *ictus, ūs,* M.
boar, *aper, aprī,* M.
boast (v.), *glōrior.*[1]
boast (n.), *glōria, ae,* F.
boat, *linter, tris,* M.; *nāvis, is,* F.
body, *corpus, oris,* N.
bold, *audāx, ācis.*
bond, *vinculum,* ī, N.
bone, *os, ossis,* N.
book, *liber, librī,* M.
booty, *praeda, ae,* F.
border, *fīnis, is,* M. (rarely F.).
born, *ortus* (abl.); to be —, *nāscor,*[3] *nāt-.*
both, *ambo, ae, o; uterque, utraque, utrumque* (gen. *utrīusque*); — of whom, *quī utrique;* both ... and, *et ... et;* on — sides, *utrimque.*
bottom (of), *īmus, a, um.*
bound (v.), *contineo,*[2] *uī, tent-.*
bountiful, *beneficus, a, um.*
bounty, *beneficium,* ī, N.
bow, *arcus, ūs,* M.
bowl, *catillus, i,* M.; *patera, ae,* F.; *pōculum,* ī, N.
boy, *puer, eri,* M.; become a — again, *repuerāsco.*[3]
brain, *cerebrum,* ī, N.

Digitized by Google

branch, *rāmus, i,* M.
branching, *rāmōsus, a, um.*
brandish, *vibro.*[1]
brave, *fortis, forte; audāx, ācis.*
bravely, *fortiter.*
bravery, *fortitūdo, dinis,* F.
bread, *pānis, is,* M.
breadth, *lātitūdo, inis,* F.
break, *frango,*[3] *frēgī, fract-;* — into laughter, *vultum rīsū solvere.*
breaking, *fractūra, ae,* F.
breast, *pectus, oris,* M.
breath, *spīritus, ūs,* M.
brevity, *brevitās, ātis,* F.
bribe, *dōnum, i,* N.
bribery, *ambitus, ūs,* M.
brick, *later, is,* M.
bridge, *pōns, pontis,* M.
brief, *brevis, e;* in —, *quid multa?*
briefly, *pauca* (acc. pl.).
bright, *clārus, lūcidus, a, um.*
brightness, *clāritās, ātis,* F.
brilliant, be, *flōreo,*[2] *rui.*
bring, *fero* (irreg.), *affero, perfero;* — about, *efficio, perficio,*[3] *fēci, fect-;* — charge against, *crīminor*[1]*;* — forward, *prōdūco, xi, ct-;* — out, *effero;* — to light, *illūstro*[1]*;* — to pass, *efficio;* — together, *cōgo,*[3] *coēgi, coact-;* — word, *nūntio* (*renūntio*[1]).
broad, *lātus, a, um.*
broken, *fractus, a, um;* — piece, *fragmentum, ī,* N.
brook, *rīvus, rīvulus, i,* M.
brother, *frāter, tris,* M.
bud, *gemma, ae,* F.
build, *aedifico.*[1]
bull, *taurus, ī,* M.
burden, *onus, oneris,* N.
burdensome, *gravis, e;* less —, *levior, us.*
burn (intr.), *ardeo,*[2] *arsi, ars-;* (tran.), *ūro,*[3] *ussi, ust-.*
bury, *sepelio,*[4] *īvī, sepultum;* *dēfodio,*[3] *fōdi, foss-.*
business, *rēs, rei,* F.; *negōtium, i,* N.; *ratio, ōnis,* F.; (a concern), *cūrātio, ōnis,* F.
busy, *occupātus, a, um.*
but, *sed, at, autem, vērō;* (unless, or except), *nisi;* after general negative expressions, *quīn;* — little, *parum;* — few, *pauci;* — if, *sīn, quod sī.*
buy, *emo,*[3] *ēmi, empt-.*
by (agent after passives), *ā, ab* (abl.); — no means, *nullō modō, nēquāquam;* — day, *interdiū;* — night, *noctū;* of means, abl.

C.

Cæsar, *Caesar, aris.*
Caius, *Gāius, ī,* M. (initial, *C.*).
cake, *lībum, ī,* N.
calamity, *calamitās, ātis,* F.
calf, *vitulus, i,* M.
call, *voco, appello*[1]*; dīco,*[3] *xi, ct-;* — out, *ēvoco*[1]*;* — to mind, *recordor*[1]*;* — upon, *implōro.*[1]
calm, *placidus, a, um.*
Cambyses, *Cambȳsēs, is.*
camp, *castra, ōrum* (N. pl.).
can, *possum, posse, potui;* cannot, *nōn possum; nequeo, īre, īvī.*
Cannæ, of —, *Cannēnsis, e.*
capital (chief town), *caput, itis,* N.
Capitol, *Capitōlium, ī,* N.
captive, *captīvus, a, um.*
capture (v.), *capio,*[3] *cēpi, capt-.*
care, *cūra, ae,* F.; (watchfulness), *dīligentia, ae,* F.; — for,

Digitized by Google

or take — of, *cūro*[1] (acc.); *studeo*,[2] *dui* (dat.).

carefully, *dīligenter.*

careless, *neglegēns, ntis.*

carry, *porto*,[1] *fero* (irr.), *perfero*; — away, *aufero, abstuli, ablāt-*; — on (war), *gero*,[3] *gess, gest-*; *īnfero* (dat.); — back, *refero.*

Carthage, *Carthāgo, inis,* F.

Carthaginian, *Carthāginiēnsis, e.*

casket, *arca, ae,* F.

Cassius, of, *Cassiānus, a, um.*

cast, *jacio*,[3] *jēci, jactum*; — down (v.), *dējicio*[3] (*dēicio*), *jēcī, ject-*; — off, *repudio.*

cat, *fēlis, is,* M. or F.

catch, *capio*[3] (*excipio*), *cēpi, capt-*; — sight of, *cōnspicor*[1] (acc.).

Catiline, *Catilīna, ae.*

Cato, *Cato, ōnis.*

cattle, *pecus, pecoris,* N.

cause (v.), *facio*,[3] *fēci, fact-*; be caused, *fīo, fieri, fact-.*

cause (n.), *causa, ae,* F.

cautious, *cautus, a, um*; *prūdēns*; be — for, *caveo*,[2] *cāvi, caut-.*

cautiously, *cautē, ius, issimē.*

cavalry, *equitātus, ūs,* M.; *equitēs.*

censor, *cēnsor, ōris,* M.

censure, *reprehendo*,[3] *ndi, ns-.*

Ceres, *Ceres, Cereris,* F.

certain (sure), *certus, a, um*; a —, *quīdam.*

certainly, *profecto.*

chaff, to, *lūdo*,[3] *lūsi, lūs-.*

chain, *catēna, ae,* F.

chair, *sella, ae,* F.

chance (v.), *cado*,[3] *cecidi, cās-.*

chance (n.), *cāsus, ūs,* M.; by —, *forte.*

change (v.), *mūto*[1] (acc. of thing received, w. abl. of thing given).

change (n.), *versūra, ae*; *mūtātio, ōnis,* F.

changeable, *mūtābilis, e.*

character, *mōrēs, um,* M.

charge (v.), *arguo*,[3] *accūso*[1] (acc. and gen.); = attack, *impetum facere in* (acc.); bring —, *crīminor*[1] (acc.); — falsely, *īnsimulo.*[1]

charge (n.), *crīmen, inis,* N.

charm (v.), *dēlecto.*[1]

chase, *sector.*[1]

cheap, *vilis, e.*

cheerful, *hilaris, e.*

cherry, *cerasus, i,* M.

chest, *arca, ae,* F.

chestnut, *castaneus, a, um* (*nux*).

chief (n.), *dux, ducis,* M. or F.; *princeps, cipis*; (pl.) *prīmōres.*

chief (adj.), *maximus, a, um.*

chiefly, *imprīmis, maximē.*

child, *puer, eri,* M.; children (of the family), *līberī, ōrum*; (in general), *puerī.*

choice, *voluntās, tātis,* F.

choose (prefer), *mālo* (irreg.); (select), *dēligo*,[3] *lēgī, lectum*; (elect), *creo.*[1]

Cicero, *Cicero, ōnis.*

cinnamon, *cinnamum, i,* N.

citadel, *arx, arcis,* F.

citizen, *cīvis, is,* M. or F.

citizenship, *cīvitās, tātis,* F.

city (buildings, &c.), *urbs, is,* F.; (as organized state), *cīvitās, ātis*; of the —, *urbānus.*

civil, *cīvīlis, e.*

clad, *vestītus, a, um.*

class, *genus, generis,* N.

claw, *unguis, is,* M.

clay, *argilla, ae,* F.

clean, *pūrus, a, um.*

clear, *clārus*; (of sky, &c.),

Digitized by Google

serēnus; (of style), *perspicuus, a, um;* (transparent), *lūcidus, liquidus, a, um.*

clothe, *vestio.*[4] [*is,* F.

clothing, *vestītus, ūs,* M.; *vestis,*

cloud, *nūbēs, is,* F.

Clusians, *Clūsīni, ōrum,* M.

coast, *ōra, ae,* F.

cock, *gallus, i,* M.

cohort, *cohors, tis,* F.

coin, *nummus, i,* M.

cold (n.), *frīgus, oris,* N.; *algor, ōris,* M.

cold (adj.), *frīgidus, a, um.*

colleague, *collēga, ae,* M.

collect, *cōnfero, comparo.*[1]

colonist, *colōnus, i,* M.

colony, *colōnia, ae,* F.

color, *color, ōris,* M.

comb, *pecten, inis,* N.

come, *venio,*[4] *vēni, vent-;* — to aid, *subvenio* (dat.); — away, *dēcēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-;* — to one's senses, *se colligo,*[3] *lēgi;* — upon, *subeo,*[4] *ii, it-* (acc.).

comedian, *comoedus, i,* M.

comedy, *comoedia, ae,* F.

comfortable, *habilis, e.*

coming, *adventus, ūs,* M.

comitia, *comitia, ōrum,* N.

command (v.), *jubeo,*[2] *jussī, jussum* (acc. and inf.); *impero*[1] (dat. and *ut* with subj.).

command (n.), *imperium, i,* N.

commander, *imperātor, ōris,* M.

commencement, *initium, i,* N.

commend, *commendo.*[1]

commerce, *mercātūra, ae,* F.

commit, *committo,*[3] *mīsi, miss-;* — a crime, *facio,*[3] *fēci, fact-.*

common, *commūnis, e; pūblicus, a, um;* — people, *plēbs, bis,* F.; — wealth, *rēs pūblica.*

commonalty, *plēbs, plēbis,* F.

companion, *socius, ī,* M.; *comes, itis,* C

compare, *comparo*[1]*; cōnfero* (irr.), (acc. and dat., or abl. w. *cum*).

comparison, *comparātio, ōnis,* F.

compel, *cōgo,*[3] *coēgi, coact-* (acc. w. inf.).

complain, *queror,*[1] *questus.*

complaint; make —, *expostulo*[1]*;* make no —, *nihil expostulo.*

complete, *perfectus, a, um.*

completely, *omnīno, penitus.*

complexion, *color, ōris,* M.

conceal, *cēlo*[1] (2 acc., or acc. of person, and abl. of thing with *dē*).

concede, *concēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-.*

concerning, *dē* (abl.).

concerns, it, *interest* (*Less.* 39. *d*).

condemn, *damno,*[1] *condemno.*[1]

condition (state), *status, ūs,* M.; (of a treaty), *lēx, lēgis,* F.; unharmed —, *incolumitās, tātis,* F.; (terms), *condicio, ōnis,* F.

conference, *colloquium, i,* N.

confess, *fateor,*[2] *fass-; confiteor,*[2] *confess-.*

confide, *fīdo*[3] (*confīdo*), *fisus* (dat. or abl.).

confidence, *fidēs, dei,* F.; spirit of —, *fidūcia, ae,* F.; want of —, *diffidentia, ae,* F.

conflagration, *incendium, ī,* N.

conform, *obsequor.*[3]

congratulate, *grātulor*[1] (dat).

congratulation, *grātulātio, ōnis.*

connected, *annexus, a, um* (dat.).

conquer, *vinco,*[3] *vīci, victum.*

conquering *or* conqueror (adj.), *victor, ōris,* M.; *victrix, īcis,* F.

conscience, *cōnscientia, ae,* F.

Digitized by Google

conscious, *cōnscius, a, um;* to be —, *sibi cōnscīre.*
consecrate, *sacro,*[1] *cōnsecro.*[1]
consent, *cōnsēnsio, ōnis,* F.; *cōnsēnsus (adsēnsus), ūs,* M.
consider (think about), *cōnsidero, pondero, cōgito*[1]*;* (regard as), *dūco,*[3] *duxi, duct-;* *exīstimo, arbitror*[1]*;* (for the interests of), *cōnsulo,*[3] *sului, sult-* (dat.).
consolation, *sōlātium, i,* N. (*-cium.*)
console, *sōlor.*[1] [*uī.*
conspicuous, to be —, *ēmineo,*[2]
conspiracy, *conjūrātio, ōnis,* F.
conspirator, *conjūrātus, i,* M.
conspire, *conjūro.*[1]
constant, *perpetuus, a, um;* as moral quality, *cōnstāns, tis.*
consul, *cōnsul, sulis;* of the —, *cōnsulāris, e.*
consulship, *cōnsulātus, ūs,* M.
consult, *cōnsulo,*[3] *sului, sult-;* — upon, *cōnfero.*
contain, *capio,*[3] *cēpi, capt-.*
contemplate, *contemplor*[1] (acc.).
contend, *contendo,*[3] *ndi, nt-;* *dēcerno,*[3] *crēvi, crēt-;* *certo, dīmico*[1]*;* (*cum* w. abl.).
contented, *contentus, a, um* (abl.).
contention, *contentio, ōnis,* F.
continue, *permaneo,*[2] *si, sum.*
contract; give —, *loco*[1] (acc. w. gerundive in agreement).
contrary to, *contrā* (acc.).
control, *administro*[1]*;* (hold in check), *moderor*[1] (dat.).
convene, *convoco.*[1]
conversation, *sermo, ōnis,* M.
convey, *cōnfero* (irr.).
convict, *damno*[1] (acc. and gen.).
Corcyræan, *Corcȳraeus, a, um.*
Corinth, *Corinthus, i,* F.; adj. *-ius.*
corn, *frūmentum, i,* N.
corner, *angulus, i,* M.
correct, *corrigo,*[3] *rexi, rect-.*
corrupt, *corrumpo,*[3] *rūpi, rupt-.*
costly, *pretiōsus, a, um.*
cough, *tussis, is, im, i,* F.
could, past tenses of *possum.*
council, *cōnsilium, concilium, i.*
counsel, *cōnsilium, i,* N.; need of —, *opus cōnsulto;* mad —, *furor, ōris;* take — against, *cōnsulo,*[3] *sului, sult-* (*in* w. acc.).
count, *numero.*[1]
countenance, *vultus, ūs,* M.
country (native), *patria, ae,* F.; (opposed to city), *rūs, rūris,* N.; *agri, ōrum;* in the —, *rūrī;* from the —, *rūre;* to the —, *rūs* (acc.); one's —, *patrius, a, um;* — people, *rūstici, ōrum.*
countryman, *populāris, is;* fellow-citizen, possessive adj.
courage, *virtūs, ūtis;* *fortitūdo, inis,* F.; *animus, i,* M.; good —, *māgnus animus.*
course, *cursus, impetus, ūs,* M.
court, *supplico,*[1] *īnservio*[4] (dat.); (pay respect to), *colo.*[3]
courtesy, *officium, i,* N.
cover, *tego,*[3] *texī, tectum;* *operio,*[4] *uī, opertum.*
covered, *opertus.*
covetous, *avārus, a, um.*
cow, *vacca, ae,* F.
coward, *īgnāvus, a, um* (adj.).
cowardice, *īgnāvia, ae,* F.
crab, *cancer, cri,* M.
cradle, *cūnae, ārum* (F. plur.).
craft, *sollertia, ae,* F.
crane, *grūs, gruis,* F.
crash, *fragor, ōris,* M.
crazy; be —, *īnsānio.*[4]
create, *creo.*[1]
creature, *animal, ālis,* N.

Digitized by Google

creditor, *crēditor, ōris,* M. [N.
crime, *scelus, eris; facinus, oris,*
crocodile, *crocodilus, ī,* M.
crops, *frūgēs, um,* (F. plur.).
cross, *trānseo,*[4] *supero,*[1] *trajicio,*[3] *jēci, ject-; trānsmitto, mīsi,*[3] *miss-; trānscendo,*[3] *ndi, ēns-.*
crow, *corvus, i,* M.
crowd, *turba, ae; multitūdo, inis,* F.; in crowds, *frequēns.*
crown, *corōna, ae,* F.
cruel, *crūdēlis, e; saevus, a, um.*
cruelty, *crūdēlitās, tātis,* F.
crush, *comprimo,*[3] *pressi, press-.*
cry, *vagio*[4]*;* — out, *exclāmo.*[1]
cub, *catulus, i,* M.
cultivate, *colo,*[3] *colui, cult-.*
cultivated, *hūmānus, a, um.*
cure (V.), *medeor.*[2]
cure (N.), *remedium, ī,* N.
Curio, *Cūrio, ōnis.*
curse, *maledīco,*[3] *xi, ct-* (dat.).
custody, *custōdia, ae,* F.
custom, *mōs, mōris,* M.
customary, *ūsitātus, a, um.*
cut, *seco,*[1] *ui, sect-;* — to pieces, *caedo,*[3] *cecīdi, caes-.*

D.

dagger, *pugio, ōnis,* M.
daily (adj. by day), *diurnus, a, um;* (every day), *quotīdiānus, a, um;* (adv.), *quotīdiē* (*cot-*).
dance, *salto.*[1]
danger, *perīculum, ī,* M.
dangerous, *perīculōsus, a, um.*
dare, *audeo,*[2] *ausus.*
dark, *obscūrus, a, um.*
darkness, *tenebrae, ārum,* F.
dated, *datus, a, um* (of a letter; i.e., *given* to the messenger).
daughter, *fīlia, ae,* F.
day, *diēs, ēī,* M.; by —, *interdiū;* in one —, *ūnō diē;* every —, *cotīdiē;* this —, *hodiernus diēs;* — after, *diēs posterus.*
daybreak, at, *prīmā lūce.*
dead, *mortuus, a, um.*
deaf, *surdus, a, um.*
deal, a great, *multum, plūrimum.*
dear, *cārus, a, um.*
death, *mors, rtis; nex, necis,* F.; put to —, *interficio,*[3] *fēci, fect-;* condemn to —, *capitis damnāre.*
deceitful, *fallāx, ācis.*
deceive, *dēcipio,*[3] *cēpi, cept-; fallo,*[3] *fefelli, fals-.*
decide, *statuo,*[3] *tui, statūt-.*
decision, *cōnsilium, ī,* N.
declare, *profiteor,*[2] *profess-;* (make clear), *expōno,*[3] *posui, posit-;* — war, *indīco*[3] (dat.).
decree (V.), *dēcerno,*[3] *crēvi, crēt-.*
decree (N.), *dēcrētum, cōnsultum, i,* N.
dedicate, *dēdico.*[1]
deed, *factum, ī; facinus, oris,* N.
deeds, *rēs gestae,* F.
deep, *altus, profundus, a, um.*
defeat, *vinco,*[3] *vīci, vict-.*
defence, *praesidium, ī,* N.; means of —, *mūnīmentum, ī,* N.
defend, *dēfendo,*[3] *ndi, ns-; tueor,*[2] *tuit-,* or *tut-.*
defender, *dēfensor, ōris,* M.
definite, *certus, a, um.*
defraud, *fraudo*[1] (abl.).
degree, *gradus, ūs,* M.
delay (V.), *moror*[1]*;* (trans.), *retineo,*[2] *tinui, teni-.*
delay (N.), *mora, ae,* F.
delight (V.), trans. *dēlecto*[1]*;* intrans. *gaudeo,*[2] *gāvisus.*
delight (N.), *gaudium, ī,* N.; a —, *cordi* (dat.).

Digitized by Google

delightful, *jūcundissimus, a, um.*
deliver, *trādo,*[3] *didi, dit-.*
demand, *posco,*[3] *poposci* (2 acc.); *postulo*[1] (*ab*).
demolish, *dēmōlior.*[1]
den, *specus, ūs,* M.
dense, *dēnsus, a, um.*
deny, *nego,*[1] *recūso.*[1]
depart, *abeo,*[4] *dēcēdo*[3] (*discēdo, excēdo, sēcēdo*), *cessi, cess-; ēmigro*[1]; (set out), *proficiscor,*[3] *fectus.*
departure, *discessus, ūs,* M.; (setting out), *profectio, ōnis,* F.
depend on, *nītor,*[3] *nīs-,* or *nix-* (abl.).
depraved, *prāvus, a, um.*
deprive, *prīvo.*[1]
deprived, be, *careo*[2] (abl.).
descended, *ortus, a, um* (abl.).
desert, *dēsero,*[3] *serui, sert-.*
deserve, *mereo,* or *mereor*[2]; *dēbeo,*[2] *ui, it-.*
design, *cōnsilium, i,* N.
desire (v.), *cupio, concupisco,*[3] *īvi, īt-;* (wish), *dēsīdero*[1]; — more, *mālo* (*quam*).
desire (n.), *cupīdo, inis; cupiditas, tātis,* F.; *studium, i,* N.; *voluntās, tātis,* F.
desirous, *cupidus, a, um.*
desist, *dēsisto,*[3] *stitī, stit-.*
despair, *dēspēro.*[1]
despise, *contemno,*[3] *psi, pt-.*
destiny, *fātum, ī,* N.
destroy, *dēleo,*[2] *ēvī, ētum; perdo,*[3] *didī, dit-.*
destruction, *interitus, ūs,* M.; *clādēs, is,* F.
detain, *traho,*[3] *traxi, tract-.*
deter, *dēterreo.*[2]
determine, *statuo,*[3] *tui, tūt-.*
determined; it is —, *certum est.*
detract, *dērogo*[1] (dat.).
devour, *voro,*[1] *dēvoro.*[1]
dew, *rōs, rōris,* M.
dictator, *dictātor, ōris,* M.
die, *morior,*[3] *mortuus, moritūrus.*
differ, *disto*[1] (no perf.), *differo* (irr.) *ab;* — in opinion, *dissentio,*[4] *sī, sum.*
difficult, *difficilis, e.*
difficulty, *difficultās, tātis,* F.; with —, *vix.*
dig, *fodio,*[3] *fōdi, foss-.*
dignity, *dignitās, tātis,* F.; *honor, ōris,* M.
diligence, *dīligentia, ae,* F.
diligent, *diligēns, tis.*
dine, *cēno.*[1]
dinner, *cēna, ae,* F.; after —, *cēnātus, a, um* (as adj.).
direct, *praescrībo,*[3] *psi, pt-.*
direction, *pars, partis,* F.
disadvantage, *inīquitās, tātis,* F.
disaster, *clādēs, is,* F.; *incommodum, i,* N.
disburden, *exonero.*[1]
disciple, *discipulus, i,* M.
disclose, *indico.*[1]
discourse (v.), *dissero,*[3] *rui, rt-; disputo,*[1] *ēloquor.*[3]
discourse (n.), *sermo, ōnis,* M.; *ōrātio, ōnis,* F.
discover, *invenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-.*
discuss, *dissero,*[3] *rui, rt-; disputo.*[1]
discussion, *disputātio, ōnis,* F.
disdainfully, *fastīdiōsē.*
disease, *morbus, ī,* M.
disgraceful, *turpis, e.*
disparage, *vitupero.*[1]
dispersed, *dispersus, a, um.*
dispute (v.), *disputo.*[1]
dispute (n.), *disputātio, ōnis,* F.; *contrōversia, ae,* F.
dissatisfied, I am, *mē paenitet.*

Digitized by Google

dissuade, *āvoco*[1] (*ab*).
distance, *spatium, intervallum, ī,* N.; at a —, *procul.*
distant (adj.), *distāns, ntis.*
distant (adv.); be —, *abesse.*
distinguish, *orno.*[1]
distinguished, *clārus, a, um.*
distress, *ango,*[3] *anxi, anct-.*
distressed, *abjectus, a, um; miser.*
district, *regio, ōnis,* F.
distrust, *diffīdo,*[3] *fīsus* (dat.).
disturbance, *perturbātio, ōnis,* F.
divine, *dīvīnus, a, um;* or expr. by the gen. *deōrum.*
do, *facio,*[3] *fēcī, factum; ago,*[3] *ēgī, actum;* as auxiliary, in questions or commands, not translated; to be done, *fierī;* — good, *prōsum* (dat.); — not, *cave,* with pres. subj.; *nōlī, nē.*
doctor, *medicus, ī,* M.
doctrines, N. plur. of adj.
doe, *cerva, ae,* F.
dog, *canis, is,* C. (gen. pl. *um*).
dominion, *imperium, i,* N.
done for; be — —, *pereo,*[4] *ii, it-.*
door, *jānua, ae,* F.; out of —, *forīs;* (of motion) *forās.*
doubt (v.); *or* be in —, *dubito*[1]; *esse dubium* (dat.).
doubt (n.), *dubium* (N. adj.); *dubitātio, ōnis,* F.
doubtful, *dubius, a, um.*
doubtless, *sānē, nīmīrum.*
dove, *columba, ae,* F.
dove-cote, *columbārium, ī,* N.
draw, *traho,*[3] *xi, ctum.* [*tuo.*[3]
dread (v.), *reformīdo,*[1] *praeme-*
dread (n.), *horror, ōris,* M.
dreadful, *terribilis, e; formīdulōsus, a, um.*
dream (v.), *somnio.*[1]
dream (n.), *somnium, i,* N.
drink, *bibo.*[3]
drive, *pello* (*impello, compello*),[3] *puli, puls-; ago,*[3] *ēgi, act-;* (away), *dēpello, expello;* — back, *dēpello;* (in defeat), *fugo.*[1]
drop (dropping), *gutta, ae,* F.
duck, *anas, atis,* C.
due, to be, passive of *dēbeo.*[2]
dunce (adj.), *stolidus, a, um.*
during, accusative case.
dust, *pulvis, eris,* M.
duty, *mūnus, eris,* N.; sense of —, *officium, ī,* N.
dwell, *habito.*[1]
dwelling, *habitātio, ōnis,* F.

E.

each, *quisque, quaeque, quodque, ūnusquisque;* (of two), *uterque, utraque, utrumque.*
eager, *cupidus, a, um.*
eagerly, *avidē.*
eagerness; with greatest —, *summā ope.*
eagle, *aquila, ae,* F.
ear, *auris, is,* F.
early (adj.), *prīscus, a, um.*
early (adv.), *mātūrē.*
earnest, *gravis, e.*
earnestly, *vehementer, magnō operē.*
earnestness, *dīligentia, ae,* F.
earth, *terra, ae,* F.; of —, *terrēnus, a, um.*
ease, *ōtium, i,* N.
easily, *facile, facilius, facillimē.*
easy, *facilis, e.*
eat, *edo,*[3] *ēdi, ēs-; vescor*[1] (abl.).
eddying, *aestus, ūs,* M.
education, *doctrīna, ae,* F.
effect, have, *valeo.*[2]
egg, *ōvum, i,* N.

Digitized by Google

either, *uter, utra, utrum* (gen. *ĭus*); either ... or, *aut ... aut, vel ... vel*; not —, *nec, neque.*
elder, *mājor nātū.*
elect (v.), *facio,*[3] *fēci, fact-, creo.*[1]
elect (adj.), *dēsīgnātus.*
elegance, *urbānitās, tātis,* F.; *hūmānitās, tātis,* F. [*um.*
elegant, *ēlegāns, ntis; lautus, a,*
eloquence, *ēloquentia, ae,* F.; *ōrātio, ōnis,* F.
eloquent, *ēloquēns, ntis; dīsertus, a, um.*
else, *aliud.*
elude, *elūdo,*[3] *lūsi, lūs-.*
eminent, *ēminēns, ntis.*
emperor, *imperātor, ōris,* M.
empire, *imperium, i,* N.
employ (make use of), *ūtor,*[3] *ūsus* (abl.).
empty, *inānis, e.*
encamp, *castra facio,*[3] *fēci, fact-.*
encouragement, *hortātio, cohortātio, ōnis,* F.
end, *fīnis, is,* M. (rarely F.).
endure, *fero* (irr.); *patior,*[3] *pass-; tolero.*[1]
enemy (public), *hostis, is,* M.; (personal), *inimīcus, ī,* M.
enhance, *augeo,*[2] *auxi, auct-.*
enjoy, *fruor, perfruor,*[3] *fruct-* (abl.).
enjoyed, *ūsitātus, a, um.*
enjoyment, *dēlectātio, ōnis,* F.
enmity, *inīmicitia, ae,* F.
enough, *satis* (gen.).
enrol, *scrībo,*[3] *psi, pt-.*
enter, *intro*[1]*; ingredior,*[3] *gress-; introeo,*[4] *ii, it-*; — into, *ineo*; — upon, *ingredior* (acc.).
entirely, *omnīno, plānē.*
entreat, *ōro, exōro, obsecro, supplico*[1] (dat.); *ago*[3] *cum.*
entrust, *committo,*[3] *mīsi, miss-.*
envy (v.), *invideo,*[2] *dī, sum* (dat.).
envy (n.), *invidia, ae,* F.
Epaminondas, *Epamīnōndās, ae.*
Epicurean, *Epicūrēus, i.*
Epirot, *Epīrōtēs, ae,* M.
equal, *pār, paris*; (well-balanced), *aequus, a, um*; — in age, *aequālis, e*; make —, *adaequo.*[1]
equanimity, *aequus animus.*
err, *erro.*[1]
escape (v.), *ēvādo,*[3] *vāsi, vās-*; (intr.), *perfugio,*[3] *fūg-*; *effugio,*[3] *fūgi, fugitum.*
escape (n.), *fuga, ae,* F.; *effugium, ī,* N.
especially, *imprīmis, praesertim, maximē, potissimum.*
establish, *cōnstituo,*[3] *tui, tūt-.*
established, well, *firmus, a, um.*
esteem, *facio,*[3] *fēci, fact-; habeo.*[2]
esteemed; to be —, dat. of service.
estimation; in — of, *apud* (acc.).
eternal, *aeternus, a, um.*
Etruscan, *Etruscus, a, um.*
even, *etiam, quoque, ipse*; not —, *nē ... quidem*; — if, *etiamsī.*
even (adj.), *aequus, a, um.*
evening, *vesper, eri,* M.
ever, *umquam* (only with negative, &c.).
every, *omnis, e*; — thing, *omnia.*
evil, *malus, a, um*; as noun, *malum, ī,* N.
examine, *cōnsīdero.*[1]
excel (trans.), *praesto, stiti, stit-*, or *stāt-*; *antecēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-*; *antecello*[3] (dat. or acc.); (intrans.), *excello.*[3]
excellent, *ēgregius, a, um*; *praestāns, excellēns, ntis*; *praestābilis, e*; *optimus, praeclārus, a, um.*

Digitized by Google

excess, *nimia* (N. plur.).
exchange, *permūto*[1] (acc. of the thing given).
excite, *moveo*,[2] *mōvi, mōt-*; — strongly, *īnflammo*[1]; — war, *īnfero* (dat.).
excuse, *excūso*.[1]
exercise, *exerceo*,[2] *cui, cit-*.
exhort, *hortor*.[1]
exile, *exsilium, i,* N.; an —, *exsul, sulis,* C.; in —, *extorris, e* (abl.).
expect, *spēro, arbitror*[1]; (wait for), *exspecto*.[1]
expectation, *exspectātio, ōnis,* F.; *opīnio, ōnis,* F.
expense, *sumptus, ūs,* M.
experience, *exercitātio, ōnis,* F.
experienced, *perītus, a, um* (gen.).
explain, *explico*.[1]
expression, an, *vōx, vōcis,* F.
extant, be, *exsto*.[1]
extinguish, *exstinguo*,[3] *nxi, nct-*.
extraordinary, *singulāris, e; eximius* (*ēgregius*), *a, um*.
extreme, *summus, a, um*.
eye, *oculus, ī,* M.; dim. *ocellus;* in eyes of, *apud* (acc.).

F.

fable, *fābula, ae,* F.
face, *vultus, ūs,* M.
fair, *serēnus; albus, a, um*.
faith, *fidēs, eī,* F.
faithful, *fīdus, a, um; fidēlis, e*.
Faliscan, *Faliscus, a, um*.
fall, *cado*,[3] *cecidī, cāsum; ruo*,[3] *corruo*.[3]
false, *falsus, a, um*.
falsehood, *mendācium, i,* N.
fame, *fāma, ae; glōria, ae,* F.
family, *familia, ae,* F.; one's —, poss. adj. masc. plur.
famine, *fāmēs, is,* F.
famous, *ēgregius, a, um; nōbilis*.
far, *longē, procul*.
farewell, *valē*.
farmer, *agricola, ae,* M.
fashionable, *lautus, a, um*.
fast (adj.), *citus, rapidus, a, um*.
fast (adv.), *cito*.
fasting, *inedia, ae,* F.
fatal, *capitālis, e*.
fate, *fortūna, ae,* F.
father, *pater, tris; parēns, tis;* father's, *patrius, a, um*.
fatherland, *patria, ae,* F.
fault, *vitium, ī,* N.; *culpa, ae,* F.; find — with, *accūso*.[1]
favor (v.), or be favorable, *faveo*,[2] *fāvi, faut-; studeo*.[2]
favor (n.), *grātia, ae,* F.
favorable, *secundus, a, um*.
fear (v.), *timeo*,[2] *mui; metuo*,[3] *tui; vereor*[2]; *praemetuo, pertimesco*.[3]
fear (n.), *timor, ōris,* M.; *metus, ūs,* M.
feather, *penna, plūma, ae,* F.
feed, *vescor*[3] (abl.); (tr.) *pāsco*,[3] *pāvi, past-*.
feel, *sentio*,[4] *sēnsi, sēns-*.
feelings, *animus, i,* M.
feign, *simulo*.[1]
fertile, *fertilis, e*.
fervor, *fervor, ōris,* M.
fever, *febris, is, im, i,* F.
few; but —, *pauci, ae, a; parum multi;* very —, *perpauci*.
fickle, *levis, e*.
fidelity, *fidēlitās, ātis; fidēs, ei,* F.
field, *ager, agri,* M.
fierce, *ferōx, ōcis; ācer, cris, cre*.
fig, *ficus, i,* M.

Digitized by Google

fight, *pūgno,*[1] *dīmico*[1]*; dēcerno,*[3] *crēvi, crēt-; cōnflīgo,*[3] *flīxi, flict-.*
fill, *compleo (impleo),*[2] *ēvi, ētum.*
fillet, *īnfula, ae,* F.
filth, *squālor, ōris,* M.
find, *invenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-; reperio,*[4] *peri, pert-;* — fault with, *accūso.*[1]
fine, *praeclārus, a, um.*
fine; in —, *in summā.*
finger, *digitus, i,* M.
finish, *or* — up, *cōnficio,*[3] *fēci, fect-.*
fire, *īgnis, is,* M.; set on —, *incendo,*[3] *di, sum.*
firm, *firmus, a, um.*
firmness, *firmitās, tātis,* F.
first, *prīmus, a, um; princeps, cipis.*
fish, *piscis, is,* M.
fit, *idōneus, a, um.*
flee, *fugio,*[3] *fūgi, fugit-.*
fleet, *classis, is,* F.
flesh, *caro, carnis,* F.
flight, *fuga, ae,* F.
flock, *pecus, pecoris,* N.
flow, *fluo,*[3] *fluxi, flux-.*
flower, *flōs, flōris,* M.; made of flowers, *flōreus, a, um.*
fly (v.), *volo*[1]*;* flee, *fugio,*[3] *fūgi, fugitum.*
fly (n.), *musca, ae,* F.
follow, *sequor (īnsequor),*[3] *secūt-;* — advice, *ūtor,*[3] *ūsus* (abl.).
follower, *sectātor, ōris,* M.; masc. adj. (as, *Pompēiānus*).
folly, *stultitia, ae,* F.
fond, *studiōsus, a, um* (gen.).
food, *cibus, i,* M.
fool, *stultus, i,* M. (adj. as noun).
foolish, *stultus, ineptus, a, um.*
foot, *pēs, pedis,* M.
footstep, *vestīgium, i,* N.
for (prep.), *ad, in;* (advantage), dative case; (characteristic), gen. case; — this reason, *ideo.*
for (conj.), *nam, enim, namque.*
forbid, *veto,*[1] *ui, itum* (acc. and inf.); *prohibeo,*[2] *ui, itum* (with *nē* and subj.).
force (v.), *compello,*[3] *puli, puls-.*
force (n.), *vīs, vim, vi;* pl., *vīrēs, ium,* F.; **a** —, *manus, ūs,* F.
forces (troops), *cōpiae, ārum,* F.
foreign, *externus (aliēnus), a, um.*
foreigner, *peregrīnus, i,* M.
foresee, *prōvideo,*[2] *vīdi, vīs-.*
foresight, *prūdentia, ae,* F.
forest, *silva, ae,* F.
foretell, *praedīco,*[3] *dixi, dict-.*
forget, *oblīviscor,*[3] *līt-* (gen.).
forgetful, *oblītus, a, um; immemor, oris.*
forgive, *īgnōsco,*[3] *gnōvi* (dat.).
form (v.), *fingo,*[3] *nxi, fict-;* — plans, *ineo.*[4]
form (n.), *forma, figūra, ae,* F.
former, *superior, us.*
formula, *formula, ae,* F.
fortified, *mūnītus, a, um.*
fortify, *mūnio,*[4] *commūnio.*[4]
fortunate, *fēlix, īcis; fortūnātus, a, um.*
fortune, *fortūna, ae,* F.; good —, *fēlīcitās.*
forum, *forum, i,* N.
found, *condo,*[3] *didi, dit-.*
founder, *conditor, ōris,* M.
fountain, *fōns, fontis.*
fourth (adj.), *quartus, a, um.*
fourth (adv.), *quartō.*
fox, *vulpēs, is,* F.
frail, *fragilis, e.*
fraud, *fraus, fraudis,* F.
free (v.), *lībero.*[1]
free (adj.), *līber, era, erum.*

Digitized by Google

freely, *līberē;* free from restraint, *incautē.*
freeze, *gelo, gelor.*[1]
frequent, *creber, bra, brum; frequēns, tis.*
fresh, *recēns, tis; integer, gra, grum.*
friend, *amīcus, i,* M.
friendly, *amīcus, a, um.*
friendship, *amīcitia, ae,* F.
frighten, *terreo,*[2] *ui, itum.*
frightened, *territus, a, um.*
frog, *rāna, ae,* F.
from; away —, *ā, ab* (abl.); out of, *ē, ex;* as denoting cause, express by ablative; (after verbs of hindering, &c.), *quīn, quōminus.*
front; in — of, *ante* (acc.)
frost, *gelū,* N.; hoar —, *pruīna, ae,* F.
frugality, *frūgālitās, tātis,* F.
fruit, *fructus, ūs,* M.; fruits, *frūgēs, um,* F.
frustrate, *irritum facio.*[3]
full, *plēnus, a, um* (gen. or abl.).
furlong, *stadium, i,* N.
furnish, *praebeo,*[2] *ui, itum; ministro.*[1]
furthest, *extrēmus, a, um.*
future, *futūrus, a, um;* the —, *futūra* (N. plur.).

G.

Gabinian, *Gabīnus, a, um.*
gaily, *hilarē.*
game, *lūdus, i,* M.
garb, *habitus* (*vestītus*), *ūs,* M.
garden, *hortus, i,* M.
gate, *porta, ae,* F.
gather, *colligo,*[3] *lēgi, lect-.*
gathering, *conventus, ūs,* M.
Gaul, the country, *Gallia, ae,* F.; the people, *Gallus, i,* M.
general, *imperātor, ōris,* M.
genial, *suāvis, e.*
geniality, *suāvitās, tātis,* F.
gentle, *lēnis, mītis, e.*
genuine, *jūstus, a, um.*
get; — possession of, *potior*[4] (abl.); — back, *repeto,*[3] *tīvi, tīt-;* — together, *comparo.*[1]
giant, *gigās, gigantis,* M.
gift, *dōnum, i; beneficium, i; mūnus, eris,* N.
give, *do, dare, dedi, dat-; reddo,*[3] *didi, dit-;* — attention, *studeo,*[2] *dui* (dat.); — a contract, *loco*[1] (with gerundive); — over, *trādo*[3]; — thanks, *grātiās agere;* — away, *cēdo, cessi, cess-.*
glad, *laetus, a, um;* I am — to hear, *libenter audio;* to be —, *gaudeo,*[2] *gāvīsus.*
gladly, *libenter, laetus* (adj.).
glorious, *clārus* (*praeclārus, glōriōsus*), *a, um.*
glory, *glōria, ae,* F.
go, *eo*[4]; *proficiscor,*[3] *fect-;* (advance), *vādo,*[3] *vāsi, vās-; pergo,*[3] *rexi, rect-;* (arrive), *pervenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-;* — away, *abeo, dēcēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-;* — from or forth, *exeo, ēgredior,*[3] *gress-* (*ab, ex, dē,* or abl.); — off, *abeo;* — on (be performed), pass. of *ago,*[3] *ēgi, act-;* (of games), *fīo;* — to bed, *abeo cubitum;* — to sleep, *condormio*[4]; going to do a thing, fut. act. part.
goat, *caper, pri,* M.; *capella, ae,* F.
god, *deus, i,* M.
goddess, *dea, ae,* F.
gold, *aurum, i,* N.

Digitized by Google

good, *bonus, a, um;* — courage, *māgnus animus;* — faith, *fides, fidei,* F.; — will, *grātia, benevolentia, ae,* F.; — for nothing, *nihili;* do — to, *prōsum* (dat.).
goodness, *bonitās, ātis,* F.
goose, *ānser, eris,* M.
gourd, *cucurbita, ae,* F.
grace, *grātia, ae,* F.
grandson, *nepōs, pōtis,* M.
grant, *tribuo,*[3] *bui, būt-;* *concēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-;* (bestow), *largior.*[4]
granting that, *licet, ut.*
grasp, *prehendo (comprehendo),*[3] *di, sum;* — at, *adripio.*[3]
grass, *grāmen, inis,* N.; *herba, ae.*
great, *māgnus, a, um;* how —, *quantus, a, um;* so —, *tantus, a, um;* greatest (of qualities), *summus, a, um.*
great-grandfather, *proavus, i,* M.
greatly, *māgni* (with *interest,* etc.), *māgnopere.*
greatness, *māgnitūdo, inis,* F.
Greece, *Graecia, ae,* F.
greediness, *cupiditās, tātis,* F.
greedy, *avidus, a, um.*
Greek, *Graecus, a, um;* (the language), *Graeca* (N. plur.).
grief, *dolor, ōris;* *lūctus, ūs,* M.
grievance (or sense of grief), *dolor, ōris,* M.
grieve, *doleo,*[2] *ui;* *lūgeo,*[2] *xi, ct-.*
ground, *terra, ae,* F.; *solum, i,* N.; (reason), *causa, ae,* F.
grove, sacred, *lūcus, i,* M.
grow, *crēsco,*[3] *crēvi, crēt-;* *orior,*[3] *ort-, oritūrus.*
grudge, *invideo,*[2] *vīdi, vīs-* (acc. and dat.).
guard (v.) against, *or* be on one's —, *caveo,*[2] *cāvi, caut-.*
guard (n.), *custōdia, ae,* F.; *praesidium, i,* N.; (guardian), *custōs, ōdis,* C.
guest, *hospes, pitis,* C.
guide, *dux, ducis,* C.
guilty of, *astrictus, a, um* (abl.)
gulf, *gurges, itis,* M.; *sinus, ūs,* M.

H.

hail, *grando, inis,* F.
hair, *crīnis, is,* M.
hall, *ātrium, i,* N.; *aula, ae,* F.
hand, *manus, ūs,* F.
hang over, *impendeo,*[2] *di* (dat.); and be hanged to you, *dierectē.*
hanging, *dēpendēns, tis.*
Hanno, *Hanno, ōnis.*
happen, *fio;* (to any one, favorable), *contingo,*[3] *tigi, tact-;* (unfavorable), *accido,*[3] *cidi.*
happily, *beātē.*
happy, *beātus, a, um.*
harbor, *portus, ūs, ubus,* M.
hard, *difficilis, e;* *dūrus, a, um.*
hardly any one, *nēmo ferē.*
hardship, *labor, ōris,* M.
harm, *nocco,*[2] *ui* (dat.).
harmony, *cōnsēnsus, ūs,* M.
harper, *lyristēs, ae,* M.
haste, *festīnātiǫ, ōnis,* F.; need of —, *properātō opus.*
hasten, *festīno,*[1] *propero.*[1]
hastily, *temerē.*
hate (v.), *ōdi, ōsus.*
hate, hatred, *odium, i,* N.
have, *habeo*[2]*;* (dative of poss., *Less.* 42. *b*); — advantage, *praesto,*[1] *stiti, stit-;* — effect, *valeo*[2]*;* — hope, *spēro*[1]*;* — leave, or right, *licet;* — need, *egeo*[2]*, ui* (abl.); — respect to, *pertineo*[2] *ad.*

Digitized by Google

he, *is, ille;* but generally implied in third person.
head, *caput, itis*, N.
health, *salūs, ūtis*, F.; state of —, *valētūdo, inis*, F.; be in good —, *valeo*.[2]
healthful, *salūber, bris, bre.*
heap, *acervus, i*, M.
hear, *or* — of, *audio, exaudio*.[4]
hearer, *auditor, ōris*, M.
heart, *cōr, cordis*, N.; *animus, i.*
hearth, *focus, i*, M.
heat, *calor, ōris*, M.
heaven, *caelum, i*, N.; pl. *caeli*, M.
heavy, *gravis, e.*
Hector; of —, *Hectoreus, a, um.*
height, *altitūdo, inis*, F.
Hellespont, *Hellēspontus, i*, M.
helm, *gūbernāculum, i*, N.
help (v.), *prōsum, subvenio*,[4] *vēni, vent-* (dat.); cannot —, *praeterīre*, or *facere nōn posse.*
help (n.), *auxilium, i*, N.
hen, *gallīna, ae*, F.
hence, *hinc.*
Hephæstion, *Hephaestiōn, ōnis.*
her (obj.), *eam;* (poss.), *ējus;* — own (emph.), *ipsīus;* (refl.), *suus, a, um.*
Hercules, by, *hercule, mēhercule.*
herdsman, *bubulcus, i*, M.
here, *hīc.*
hereafter, *posteā.*
hero, *vir, viri; hērōs, ōis, ōa*, M.
hesitate, *dubito*.[1]
hidden, *occultus, a, um.*
hide, *cēlo*[1] (2 acc.); *occulo*,[3] *ui, occultum.*
high, *altus, a, um.*
highest, *summus, a, um.*
high ground, *collēs, ium* (M. pl.).
highly, *māgni;* so high, *tanti.*
hill, *collis, is*, M.
himself (emph.), *ipse;* (refl.), *sē.*
hinder, *obsto*,[1] *stiti, stit-.*
hindrance, *impedīmentum, i*, N.
his, *ejus* (gen. of **is**); — own (emph.), *ipsīus;* (refl.), *suus, a, um:* omitted when it is implied from the context.
history, *historia, ae*, F.
hitherto, *adhūc.*
ho, *heus!*
hold, *teneo* (*obtineo*),[2] *ui, tent-; habeo*,[2] *ui, it-;* (regard), *dūco*.[3]
holding; power of —, *capācitās, ātis*, F.
home, *domus, ūs*, F.; at —, *domī;* towards —, *domum;* from —, *domō.*
Homer, *Homērus, i*, M.
honest, *probus, a, um.*
honesty, *probitās, ātis*, F.
honey, *mel, mellis*, N.
honor (v.), *augeo*,[2] *auxi, auct-; honōro*.[1]
honor (n.), *honor, ōris*, M.; *decus, oris*, N.
honorable, *honestus, a, um.*
honorably, *honestē.*
hoof, *ungula, ae*, F.
hope (v.), *spēro*[1] (acc.).
hope (n.), *spēs, spei*, F.
hopeless, *dēspērāns, tis.*
horn, *cornū, ūs*, N.; with horns (horned), *cornūtus, a, um.*
horrible, *atrōx, atrōcis.*
horse, *equus, i*, M.
horseman, *eques, itis*, M.
host, *hospes, hospitis*, C.
hostage, *obses, obsidis*, C.
hostile, *īnfēnsus, inimīcus, a, um.*
hostility, *inimīcitia, ae*, F.
hot, *calidus, a, um.*
hotly, *ācriter.*
hour, *hōra, ae*, F.

Digitized by Google

house, *domus, ūs; aedēs, ium,* F.; at the — of, *apud* (acc.), *domi.*
how, *quam, quōmodo;* (rel.), *quemadmodum;* (interr.), *quid, quī;* — much, *quantum;* — many, *quot;* — great, *quantus, a, um;* adv. (with compar.), *quantō;* (price), *quanti.*
how so? *quīdum?*
however, *autem; quamvīs.*
howling, *fremēns, tis.*
human, *hūmānus, a, um.*
humble, *dēmissus, a, um.*
hunger, *famēs, is,* F. [*tum.*
hunt, *vēnor*[1]; a-hunting, *vēnā-*
hunter, *vēnātor, ōris,* M.
hurl, *torqueo,*[2] *sī, tum; jacio* (*conjicio*),[3] *jēcī, jact-* (*ject-*).
hurry, *festīno.*[1]
Hydruns, *Hydrūns, ntis.*

I.

I, *ego, meī, mihi, mē.*
ibis, *ibis, is* (*idis*), F.
ice, *glaciēs, ēi.* F.
ides, *Idūs, uum,* F.
idle, *īgnāvus, a, um; iners, tis.*
if, *sī;* but —, *sīn;* even —, *etiamsī.*
ignorance, *īgnōrantia, ae,* F.
ignorant, *īgnārus, a, um;* be —, *īgnōro*[1] (acc.); *nescio*[4] (with clause).
ill, *male.*
illustration, *exemplum, i,* N.
image, *imāgo, ginis,* F.; *simulācrum, i,* N.
imitate, *imitor.*[1]
immediately, *statim.*
immense, *ingēns, ntis.*
immortal, *immortālis, e.*
immortality, *immortālitās, tātis.*
impart, *impertio.*[4] [*tis.*
impatient, *festīnāns, impatiēns,*
impede, *impedio.*[4]
impel, *impello,*[3] *puli, puls-.*
impiety, *impietās, ātis,* F.
impious, *impius, a, um.*
implore, *implōro.*[1]
important, *māgnus, a, um.*
impudence, *impudentia, ae,* F.
in, *in* (abl.); — fine style, *bellissimē;* — high spirits, *lūdibundus;* — proportion to, or — behalf of, *prō* (abl.); — regard to, *dē* (abl.); — the very place, *ibīdem;* — midst of, *in* (abl.), *in medio.*
inch, *uncia, ae,* F.
inclined to think (I am), *nescio an;* — to believe, *crēdiderim.*
inconsistent, *aliēnus* (abl.); be —, *repūgno*[1] (dat.).
inconstant, *levis, e.*
increase, *crēsco,*[3] *crēvi.*
incredible, *incrēdibilis, e.*
incredibly, *incrēdibiliter.*
incur, *suscipio,*[3] *cēpi, cept-.*
indeed, *quidem.*
indulgence, *venia, indulgentia, ae,* F.
industry, *industria, ae,* F.
inferior, *īnferior, us* (with abl.).
inflict, *sūmo,*[3] *mpsi, mpt-* (*sūmere poenam dē*).
influence, *moveo,*[2] *mōvi, mōt-.*
inform, *certiōrem facere* (*dē*); — against, *dētego,*[3] *xi, ct-* (acc.).
injure, *violo.*[1]
injury, *injūria, ae,* F.
injustice; act of —, *injūria, ae,* F.
innocence, *innocentia, ae,* F.
inquire, *scīscitor*[1]; — into, *cōgnōsco,*[3] *nōvi, nit-* (*dē*).
insane, *āmēns, ntis.*

Digitized by Google

insignia, *īnsīgnia, um* (N. pl.).
insolence, *īnsolentia, ae,* F.
institution, *īnstitūtum, i,* N.
instead of, *prō* (abl.).
instruct, *doceo,*[2] *cui, ct-.*
intending to, express by future participle.
intent, *intentus, a, um* (dat.).
interdict, *interdīco,*[3] *xi, ct-* (dat. of person, and abl. of thing).
interest, *studium, i,* N.; it is one's —, *interest* (gen.); it is my —, *meā interest;* interests, *rēs, rei,* F.; consult the — of, *cōnsulo,*[3] *sului, sult-* (dat.).
interpret, *interpretor.*[1]
intimacy, *ūsus, ūs,* M.
into, *in* (acc.).
investigate, *quaero,*[3] *sīvi, sīt-* (*dē*).
investigation, *quaestio, ōnis,* F.
invite, *invīto.*[1]
Ionian, *Iōnius, a, um.*
iron, *ferrum, i,* N.
island, *īnsula, ae,* F.
it, *id, illud;* — is, *est;* itself (for itself), *sibi.*
Italy, *Italia, ae,* F.
ivy, *hedera, ae,* F.

J.

jack-knife, *cultellus, i,* M.
January (of), *januārius, a, um.*
javelin, *pīlum, i,* N.
jaw, *māla, ae,* F.
jealous, *invidus, a, um.*
jeweller, *gemmārius, i,* M.
join (trans.), *conjungo,*[3] *nxi, nct-;* (intr.), *accēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-* (*ad*).
joining, *junctūra, ae,* F.
joint, *artus, ūs,* M.
joke (v.), *jocor.*[1]
joke (n.), *jocus, i,* M.; pl. *joca.*
journey, *iter, itineris,* N.
Jove, *Juppiter, Jovis,* M.
joy, *gaudium, i,* N.
judge (v.), *jūdico; arbitror*[1]; *aestimo*[1]; *cēnseo,*[2] *nsui, ns-.*
judge (n.), *jūdex, dicis.*
judgment (legal), *jūs, jūris,* N.; (of mind), *exīstimātio, ōnis,* F.; (decision), *cōnsilium, i,* N.; pass — on, *jūdico*[1] (*de*).
June (of), *jūnius, a, um.*
Jupiter, *Juppiter, Jovis.*
just (adj.), *jūstus, aequus, a, um.*
just (adv.), *adeō;* — now, *modo;* — like, *cōnsimilis, e.*
justice, *jūstitia, ae,* F.
justly, *jūre.*

K.

Kalends, *Kalendae, ārum.*
keen, *ācer, ācris, ācre.*
keenly, *ācriter.*
keep, *servo,*[1] *teneo,*[2] *retineo*[2]; — from rest, *inquiēto.*[1]
key, *clāvis, is,* F.
kid, *haedus, i,* M.
kill, *interficio,*[3] *fēci, fect-;* (without a weapon), *neco*[1]; (violently), *occīdo,*[3] *cīdi, cīs-; obtrunco.*[1]
kind (n.), *genus, eris,* N.
kind (adj.), *benīgnus, a, um.*
kindness, *beneficium, i,* N.
king, *rēx, rēgis,* M.
kingdom, *rēgnum, i,* N.
kingly, *rēgius, a, um.*
kitchen, *cocīna, ae,* F.
knee, *genu, ūs,* N.
knight, *eques, equitis,* M.
knot, *nōdus, i,* M.
know, *scio*[4]; *intellego,*[3] *lexi, lect-;* (be acquainted), *nōvi* (perf. of *nōsco*); not —, *nescio*[4]; let —, *certiōrem facere.*

Digitized by Google

knowledge, *scientia, ae,* F.
known, *nōtus, a, um.*

L.

labor, *labor, ōris,* M.; *opus, eris,* N.
Lacedæmonian, *Lacedaemonius, a, um.*
lack, *egeo* (*indigeo*),[2] *ui* (gen. or abl.); *careo,*[2] *ui* (abl.).
ladder, *scāla, ae,* F.
lake, *lacus, ūs,* M.
lamb, *āgnus, i,* M. [*bus.*
lame, *claudus, a, um; aeger pedi-*
lament, *lāmentor.*[1]
lamentable, *flēbilis, e.*
land, *ager, gri,* M.; *terra, ae,* F.; native —, *patria, ae,* F.; by — and sea, *terrā marīque.*
language, *lingua, ae,* F.
large, *māgnus, a, um.*
last, *ultimus, postrēmus, a, um;* at —, *dēmum, postrēmo.*
lasting, *diūturnus, a, um.*
late, *sērus, a, um.*
lately, *nūper, paulō ante.*
Latin, *Latīnus, a, um;* — language, *Latīna, ōrum* (N. pl.); (adv.), *Latīnē.*
laugh (v.), *rīdeo,*[2] *rīsi, rīs-.*
laugh (n.), *rīsus, ūs,* M.
laughter, *rīsus, ūs,* M.
law (abstract), *jūs, jūris,* N.; (statute), *lēx, lēgis,* F.
lawful, *fās* (indecl.), *lēgitimus, a, um.*
lay aside, *dēpōno,*[3] *posui, posit-;* — siege to, *oppūgno*[1] (acc.); — waste, *populor,*[1] *vasto*[1]; — out, *distribuo.*[3]
lazy, *piger, gra, grum; iners, tis.*
lead, *dūco* (*perdūco*),[3] *xi, ct-;* — to do a thing, *adferre;* — across, *trānsdūco;* — away, *dēdūco;* — forth, *or* out, *ēdūco* (*ex*).
leader, *dux, ducis,* C.
leaf, *folium, i,* N.
league, *foedus, eris,* N.
learn, *disco,*[3] *didici;* — thoroughly, *ēdisco, perdisco;* (become acquainted), *cōgnōsco,*[3] *nōvi, nit-.*
learned, *doctus, a, um.*
leave (trans.), *relinquo,*[3] *līqui, lict-;* (intrans.), *excēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-* (abl.); have —, *licet;* — off, *dēsisto,*[3] *stiti, stit-* (inf.); — undone, *praetermitto.*[3]
least, *minimus, a, um;* at —, *quidem.*
left, *reliquus, a, um.*
left hand, *sinistra, ae,* F.; (adj.), *laevus;* on the —, *ad laevum.*
leg, *crūs, crūris,* N.
legion, *legio, ōnis,* F.
length, *longitūdo, inis,* F.; — of time, *diūturnitās, ātis,* F.; at —, *tandem.*
lenient, *lēnis, e.*
less (adj.), *minor, minus.*
less (adv.), *minus, secus.*
lest, *nē* (followed by subjunctive).
let know, *certiōrem facere.*
letter, *epistula, ae,* F.; letters (literature), *litterae, arum,* F.
lettuce, head of, *lactūca, ae,* F.
Leucas, *Leucas, cadis.*
level, *plānus, a, um.*
liar, *mendāx, dācis,* C.
Liber, *Līber, eri,* M.
liberality, *līberālitās, tātis,* F.
liberty, *lībertās, tātis,* F.
lie, *jaceo,*[2] *cui, cit-;* (speak falsely), *mentior.*[4]
lieutenant, *lēgātus, i,* M.

Digitized by Google

life, *vīta, ae,* F.; period of —, *aetās, tātis,* F.
light (n.), *lūx, lūcis,* F.; *lūmen, inis,* N.; (lamp), *lūcerna, ae,* F.; bring to —, *illūstro.*[1]
light (adj.) in weight, *levis, e.*
lightly, *leviter.*
like (adj.), *similis, e;* just —, *cōnsimilis, e;* in — manner, *similiter.*
like (v.), *amo*[1]; should —, *libet, velim.*
line, *ordo, dinis,* M.; — of battle, *aciēs, ēi,* F.
link, *hamus, i,* M.
lion, *leo, ōnis,* M.
lips, *ōs, ōris,* N.
listen, *or* — to, *audio,*[4] *exaudio,*[4] *ausculto.*[1]
little (adj.), *parvus, a, um.*
little (adv.), *paulō;* but —, *parum.*
live (v.), *vīvo,*[3] *vīxi, vict-;* (dwell), *habito.*[1]
live (adj.), *vīvus, a, um.*
load, *onus, oneris,* N.
lock, *sera, ae,* F.
log, *tīgnum* (*tigillum*), *i,* N.
long, *longus, a, um;* (distant), *longinquus, a, um;* (time), *diūturnus, a, um;* — established, *vetus, eris* (sup., *-rimus*); for a — time, *diū;* — ago, *jam diū;* so —, *tamdiū.*
longer, *diūtius;* no —, *nōn jam.*
look, *videor,*[2] *vīsus;* — at, *contueor,*[2] *tuit-;* — for, *requīro*[3]; — round, *circumspecto*[1]; (intrans.), *circumspicio,*[3] *spexi, spect-;* — upon, *contemplor.*[1]
lord it, *dominor.*[1]
lose, *āmitto,*[3] *mīsi, miss-; perdo,*[3] *didi, dit-; careo,*[2] *ui* (abl.).
losing, *injūriōsus, a, um.*
loss, *jactūra, ae,* F.
loud (adv.), *clārē.* [*lect-.*
love (v.), *amo*[1]; *dīligo,*[3] *lexi,*
love (n.), *amor, ōris,* N.
low, *humilis, e.*
lower (price); at —, *minōris* (gen.).
luck, *fortūna, ae,* F.
lucky, *fēlix, īcis.*
lurk, *lateo,*[2] *tui.*
lust, *libīdo, dinis,* F.
luxury, *luxuria, ae,* F.
Lyso, *Lyso, ōnis.*

M.

mad, *āmens, ntis; furiōsus, a, um;* be —, *furo,*[3] *rui.*
madman, *īnsānus, i,* M.
madness, *āmentia, ae,* F.
magistrate, *magistrātus, ūs,* M.
maiden, *puella, ae; virgo, inis,* F.
maintain (keep), *teneo,*[2] *ui, tentum;* (hold an opinion), *disputo*[1]; — friendship, *colere.*
majesty, *mājestās, tātis,* F.
make, *facio,*[3] *fēci, factum;* passive, *fīo, fieri, factus;* — answer, *rēspondeo,*[2] *ndi, ns-;* — complaint, *expostulo*[1]; — no complaint, *nihil exp.*; — equal, *adaequo*[1] (dat. or *cum*); — mistake, *committere;* — new, *novo*[1]; — out, *efficere;* — populous, *frequento*[1]; — reference, *referre;* — trial, *experior,*[4] *pert-;* — up one's mind, *statuo,*[3] *tui, tūt-;* — use of, *ūtor,*[3] *ūs-* (abl.).
man, *vir, viri,* M.; a person in general, *homo, inis;* a little —, *homunculus, i,* M.; (meaning persons of a certain quality or descent), expressed by adjectives.

Digitized by Google

manage, *gero,*[3] *gessi, gest-.*
mane, *jūba, ae,* F.
manifest, *manifestus, a, um.*
manly, *virīlis, e; fortis, e.*
manner, *modus, i,* M.; *genus, eris,* N.; after the —, *modō* (with gen.); in like —, *similiter;* in what —, *quemadmodum.*
mantle, *amictus, ūs,* M.; *pallium, i,* N.
many, *multi, ae, a; plūrēs;* very —, *plūrimi.*
March (month), *martius, a, um.*
march (v.), *iter facere, contendo.*[3]
march (n.), *iter, itineris,* N.
mark of, *or* **it marks,** gen. case.
marked, *singulāris, e.*
Mars Hill, *Arēopagus, i,* M.
marsh, *palūs, ūdis,* F.
mask, *persōna, ae,* F.
massacre, *caedēs, is,* F.
master (teacher), *magister, tri;* (of property), *dominus, i,* M.; of the —, *erīlis, e.*
matron, *mātrōna, ae,* F.
matter, *or* **matters,** *rēs, rei,* F.
May, *māius, a, um* (adj.).
may (it is permitted), *licet;* in purpose clauses, *ut* with subj.; of wish, pres. subj.
meadow, *prātum, i,* N.
mean, *vīlis, e; abjectus, a, um.*
means, *operā* (with gen.); *ratio, ōnis,* F.; (resources), *cōpiae, ārum,* F.; by no —, *nullō modō, nēquāquam.*
measure (v.), *metior,*[4] *mēnsus.*
meat, *caro, carnis,* F.
mediocrity, *mediocria, ium* (N. plur. adj.).
meet, *convenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-* (acc.); *congredior,*[3] *gress-* (*cum*); go to —, *ob viam īre* (dat.); — expectations, &c., *rēspondeo,*[2] *ndi, ns-* (dat.).
meeting, *conventus, ūs,* M.
memory, *memoria, ae,* F.
merciful, *clēmēns, tis.*
mercifully, *clēmenter.*
Mercury, *Mercurius, i.*
mercy, *clēmentia, ae,* F.; *misericordia, ae,* F.
merry, *hilaris, e.*
messenger, *nūntius, i,* M.
middle (of), *medius, a, um.*
midst; in the —, *inter* (acc.).
might, *licet, possum.* [*tis.*
mighty, *māgnus, a, um; ingēns,*
migrate, *dēmigro.*[1]
mild; to grow —, *mītēsco.*[3]
mildness, *suāvitas, tātis,* F.
mile, *mille passuum.*
military, *mīlitāris, e.*
milk, *lāc, lactis,* N.
mill, *mola, ae,* F.
mind, *mēns, mentis,* F.; (feelings), *animus, i,* M.; make up one's —, *statuo,*[3] *tui, tūt-.*
mindful, *memor, oris* (gen.).
mingling, *mixtūra, ae,* F.
mischief, *malum, i,* N.; (committed), *maleficium, i,* N.
misery, *miseria, ae,* F.
misfortune, *malum, i,* N.; *cāsus, ūs,* M.
misgiving; to have no —, *nōn dubitāre.*
mission, *lēgātio, ōnis,* F.
mistake, make, *committere.*
mistaken; to be —, *fallor.*[3]
mistress, *magistra, ae,* F.
Mitylenæan, *Mitylēnaeus, a, um.*
mix, *misceo,*[2] *cui, xt-.*
mob, *turba, ae,* F.; *tumultus, ūs,* M.
model, *specimen, minis,* N.
moderate, *moderātus, a, um.*

Digitized by Google

moderation, *moderātio, ōnis,* F.
modest, *modestus, a, um.*
money, *or* sum of —, *pecūnia,* F.; *argentum, i,* N.
monkey, *sīmia, ae,* F.
monstrous, *immānis, e.*
month, *mēnsis, is,* M.
monument, *monumentum, i,* N.
moon, *lūna, ae,* F.
more, *plūs, plūris;* (adv.), *magis;* also, sign of comparative.
morning; in the —, *māne.*
mortal, *mortālis, e.*
moss, *muscus, i,* M.
most (men), *plērīque;* (adv.), *plūrimum, maximē;* sign of superlative.
mother, *māter, tris,* F.
mound, *tumulus, i,* M. [M.
mount, mountain, *mōns, montis,*
mourn, *lūgeo,*[2] *lūxi, lūct-.*
mournful, *tristis, e.*
mouse, *mūs, mūris,* M.
mouth, *ōs, ōris,* N.
move, *moveo* (*commoveo*),[2] *mōvi, mōt-;* for intrans., use passive.
movement, *mōtus, ūs,* M.; *iter, itineris,* N.
much, *multum;* by —, *multō;* too —, *nimius, a, um.*
mule, *mūlus, i,* M.; *mūla, ae,* F.
multitude, *multitūdo, dinis,* F.
music, *mūsica, ae* (or *ē, ēs*), F.
must, *dēbeo*[2]*;* *necesse est;* generally by participle in *dus.*
my, *meus, a, um;* VOC. M., *mi.*
myrtle (of), *myrteus, a, um.*

N.

nail, *clāvus, i;* (of the finger), *unguis, is,* M.
name, *nōmen, minis,* N.
Narbo, *Narbo, ōnis.*
narrow, *artus, angustus, a, um.*
nation, *gēns, tis; populus, i,* M.; *nātio, ōnis,* F.
native land, **native city,** } *patria, ae,* F.
natural powers, *ingenium, i,* N.
nature, *nātūra, ae,* F.; *indolēs, is,* F.; *ingenium, i,* N.
nay, *immo, quīn.*
near, *prope* (acc.); nearly, *ferē.*
nearest, *proximus, a, um;* — to person speaking, *citimus.*
necessarily, *necessāriō.*
necessary, *necessārius, necesse; opus* (as pred.); necessaries, *rēs necessāriae.*
neck, *collum, i,* N.
need (v.), *or* have —, *egeo*[2] (abl.).
need (n.), *inopia, ae,* F.; (= needful), *opus, ūsus* (abl.); needs, *dēsīderium, i,* M.
needful, *opus* (as pred.).
needle, *acus, ūs,* F. [*neglego.*
neglect, *nēgligo,*[3] *glexi, glect-;* or,
negligence, *nēglegentia, ae,* F.
negligent, *nēglegēns, ntis-.*
neighbor, *vīcīnus, proximus, fīnitimus, a, um.*
neighborhood, *loca* (N. plur.); in the — of, *ad.*
neither (of two), *neuter, tra, trum* (gen. *trīus*); —...nor, *nec...nec.*
Nero, *Nero, ōnis.*
net, *rēte, is,* N.
neutral, *medius, a, um.*
never, *numquam.*
nevertheless, *tamen.*
new, *novus, a, um.*
news, *nūntius, i.* M.; *fāma, ae,* F.
next, *alter, a, um;* (day). *posterus, a, um;* — day, *postrīdiē.*

Digitized by Google

night, *nox, noctis,* F.; by —, *noctū.*
nightly, *nocturnus, a, um.*
no, *or* **no indeed,** *immo;* (adj.), *nūllus, a, um;* — longer, *nōn jam;* — one, *nēmo, inis* (for gen. and abl., *nūllīus, nūllō*).
nobility, *nōbilitās, tātis.*
noble, *nōbilis, e.*
nobody-knows-who, *nescio quis.*
noise, *strepitus,* ūs, M.
nones, *Nōnae, ārum.*
noon, *merīdiēs, ēi,* M.
nor, *neque, nec* (see **neither**).
north wind, *Aquilo, ōnis,* M.
nose, *nāsus, i,* M.; epith., *nāso.*
not, *nōn;* — at all, *minimē;* interrog. *nōnne;* — yet, *nōndum;* — even, *nē ... quidem;* imperative, *nē.*
nothing, *nihil, nihilum, i,* N.
notice, *animadverto,*[3] *ti, sum.*
November, *november, bris, bre.*
now, *nunc;* = already, *jam.*
number, *numerus, i,* M.; a great — of, *permulti, ae, a.*
nut, *nux, nucis,* F.
nymph, *nympha, ae,* F.

O.

oak, *quercus, ūs,* F.
oar, *rēmus, i,* M.
oath, *jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi.*
obedience, *obēdientia, ae,* F.
obey, *pāreo,*[2] *ui, itum* (dat.).
obscure, *obscūrus, a, um.*
obstinate, *contumāx, ācis.*
obtain, *adipiscor,*[3] *adept-.*
occupy, *teneo,*[2] *tenui, tent-.*
ocean, *ōceanus, i,* M.
October, *octōber, bris, bre* (adj.).
odium, *odium, i,* N.; *invidia, ae,* F.
of, expressed by genitive; out —, *ex;* (of separation), ablative; (= concerning), *dē* (abl.); — course, *scīlicet.*
off; to be so far —, *tantum abesse.*
offence, *injūria, ae,* F.
offended; to be —, *stomachor*[1]; rather —, *stomachāns, ntis.*
offensive, *molestus, a, um.*
offer, *dēfero;* — to do a thing, *profiteor,*[2] *fess-.*
offering, *mūnus, eris,* N.
often, *saepe;* very —, *saepissimē;* as — as, *quotiēscumque.*
oil, *oleum, i,* N.
old, *vetus, eris;* — man, *senex, is,* M.; years —, *nātus;* — age, *senectūs, ūtis,* F.; older, *mājor nātū, senior.*
olive, *olīva, ae,* F.
omen, *ōmen, inis,* N.
on, *in* (abl.); of time or instrument, expressed by ablative; — a side, *ab, ex;* = concerning, *dē;* — this account, *eō, ob eam causam;* — the ground that, *quod.*
once, *semel;* (formerly), *ōlim, quondam;* at —, *statim, prōtinus, jam.*
one, *ūnus, a, um* (gen. *īus*); a certain —, *quīdam;* any —, *quis, aliquis;* — ... another, *alius ... alius;* — ... the other, *alter ... alter;* no —, *nēmo;* the — who, *is quī;* — by —, *singuli;* — another, *inter sē.*
onion, *caepe, is,* N.; *bulbus, i,* M.
only (adj.), *sōlus, ūnus, a, um.*
only (adv.), *sōlum, tantum, modo;* not —, *cum* (followed by *tum*).
open (v.), *aperio,*[4] *ui, apertum.*
open (adj.), *apertus;* be —, *pateo.*[2]

Digitized by Google

operation, *negōtium, i.* N.
opinion, *sententia, ae,* F.; (conjecture), *opīnio, ōnis,* F.; be of —, *cēnseo,*[2] *sui, sum;* it is my —, *mihi placet.*
opportunity, *occāsio, ōnis,* F.; (power), *facultās, tātis; potestās, tātis,* F.
oppose, *obsto,*[2] *stiti, stāt-* (dat.).
opposite, *adversus, a, um* (dat.).
opposition; to make —, *obtrecto.*[1]
or, *aut, vel;* either... or, *aut (vel) ... aut (vel);* whether... or, *utrum... an;* — not, *necne, annōn.*
oracle, *rēspōnsum, i,* N.
oration, *ōrātio, ōnis,* F.
orator, *ōrātor, ōris,* M.
order (v.), *jubeo,*[2] *jussi, juss-* (acc. and inf.).
order (n.), *ordo, dinis,* M.; in —, *ex ordine;* in — that, *ut, uti, quō.*
origin, *orīgo, inis,* F.
ornament, *ornāmentum, i,* N.
other, *alius, a, ud; reliquus, cēteri;* — (of two), *alter;* of others, *aliēnus, a, um;* (diverse), *dīversus, a, um.*
otherwise, *aliter* (followed by *atque* or *āc*).
Otho, *Otho, ōnis.*
ought, *oportet* (acc. and infin.); *dēbeo.*[2]
our, *nōster, tra, trum.*
ourselves (emph.), *ipsi* (w. verb in first pers. plur.); refl., *nōs.*
out of, *ex;* — of doors, *forīs, forās.*
outside of, *extrā* (acc.).
over (prep.), *super* (acc. or abl.).
over (adv.), *suprā.*
overflow, *redundo.*[1]
overwhelm, *supero,*[1] *opprimo,*[3] *pressi, press-.*
owe, *dēbeo,*[2] *dēbui, dēbit-.*
owing to, *stat per (quōminus).*
owl, *būbo, ōnis,* M.
own, *proprius, a, um; suus,* or gen. of *ipse.*
ox, *bōs, bovis* (dat. plur. *bōbus*).
oyster, *ostrea, ae,* F.

P.

Padua, *Patāvium, i,* N.
pain, *dolor, ōris,* M.
painful, *acerbus, a, um.*
pale, *pallidus, a, um.*
panic-stricken (to be), *paveo,*[2] *pāvi.*
paper, *charta, ae,* F. [(n.), *venia.*
pardon, *īgnōsco,*[3] *nōvi, nōt-* (dat.);
parent, *parēns, tis,* M. or F.
part, *pars, partis,* F.; (of a city), *locus, i,* M.; for my —, *vērō;* take —, *intersum* (dat.).
partial, *inīquus, a, um.*
partner, *socius, i,* M.
pass (a decree), *facio,*[3] *fēci, fact-;* — by, *praetereo,*[4] *ii, it-;* — judgment, *jūdico*[1]*;* — over, *praetereo, trānseo;* (neglect), *ōmitto; praetermitto,*[3] *mīsi, miss-;* — through, *perfungor,*[3] *funct-* (abl.).
passion, *cupiditās, tātis,* F. [M.
path, *sēmita, ae,* F.; *trāmes, itis,*
patience, *patientia, ae,* F.
patrimony, *patrimōnium, i,* N.
pay (v.), *cōnstituo,*[3] *tui, tūt-; pendo,*[3] *pependi, pēns-;* — costs, *impendium reddere.*
pay (n.), *mercēs, cēdis,* F.
peace, *pāx, pācis,* F.; *ōtium, i,* N.
peaceful, *quiētus, a, um.*

Digitized by Google

pear (tree), *pirus, i,* F.; (fruit), *pirum, i,* N.
peck, *modius, i,* M.
peculiar, *singulāris, e; proprius, a, um* (gen. or dat.).
pen, *calamus, stilus, i,* M.
penetrate, *penetro.*[1]
penny, *ās, assis,* M.
people, *populus, i,* M.; common —, *plēbs, plēbis,* F.
perceive, *sentio,*[4] *sēnsi, sēns-.*
perfect, *perfectus, exactus, a, um.*
perfidy, *perfidia, ae,* F.
perform, *gero,*[3] *gessi, gest-;* — sacrifices, *facio*[3]; — duties, *fungor, perfungor*[3] (abl.).
perhaps, *fortasse.*
peril, *perīculum, i,* N.
period, *tempora, um* (N. pl.); — of life, *aetās, tātis,* F.
perish, *pereo, īre, īvi (ii), itum.*
permit, *permitto,*[3] *mīsi, miss-.*
permitted; it is —, *licet* (dat.).
Persian, *Persa, ae,* M.
persist, *persevēro.*[1]
person; use deriv. adjective.
persuade, *persuādeo,*[2] *si, sum* (dat. and *ut* with subj.).
pestilence, *pestis, is,* F.
phalanx, *phalanx, angis,* F.
Phalaris, *Phalaris, idis,* M.
Philip, *Philippus, i.*
Philolaches, *Philolachēs, is.*
philosopher, *philosophus, i,* M.
philosophy, *philosophia, ae,* F.
Phœnician, *Poenus, a, um.*
physician, *medicus, i,* M.
physics, *physica, ōrum* (N. pl.).
Picene, *Pīcēnus, a, um.*
picture, *tabula, ae,* F.
piece, *fragmentum, i,* N.; cut to pieces, *caedo,*[3] *cecīdi, caes-.*
piety, *pietās, tātis,* F.
pile, *acervus, i,* M.
pin, *acicula, ae,* F.
pine, *pīnus, i (ūs),* F.
pirate, *pīrāta, ae,* M.; —captain, *archipīrāta, ae.*
pity (v.); have —, *misereor,*[2] *misertus* (gen.), *miseret.*
pity (n.), *misericordia, ae,* F.
place (v.), *pōno,*[3] *posui, posit-;* (definite), *loco*[1]; — above, *antepōno* (dat.); — before, *prōpōno* (dat.); — together, *colloco*[1]; — upon, *impōno* (dat.).
place (n.), *locus, i,* M. (pl., *loca,* N.); in next —, *deinde;* to the —, *eō;* take —, *fīo.*
plain (n.), *campus, i,* M.
plain (adj.), *plānus, aequus, a, um.*
plan, *cōnsilium, i,* N.; (system), *ratio, ōnis,* F.
plane-tree, *platanus, i,* F.
Plato, *Plato, ōnis.*
play, *lūdo,*[3] *si, sum.*
plea, *ōrātio, ōnis,* F.
pleader, *ōrātor, oris,* M.
pleasant, *jūcundus, amoenus, a, um.*
please, *dēlecto*[1] (acc.), *libet;* (give satisfaction), *placeo*[2] (dat.).
pleasing, *grātus, a, um.*
pleasure, *voluptās, tātis,* F.; take —, *libet;* with —, *libenter.*
plots, *īnsidiae, ārum,* F.
plough, *aro*[1]; — around, *circumaro.*[1]
poet, *poēta, ae,* C.
point (spot, place), *locus, i,* M.; *pars, partis,* F.; N. adj.
poison, *venēnum, i,* N.
politics, *rēs pūblica.*
Pollux, by, *pol, ēdepol.*
Pompey, *Pompēius, i.*
pontifex, *pontifex, ficis,* M.
poor, *pauper, cris; egēns, tis.*

Digitized by Google

poppy, *papāver, eris,* N.
popular, *grātus, a, um.*
populous; make —, *frequento.*[1]
portend, *significo.*[1]
position, *loca, ōrum,* M.
possess, *possideo,*[2] *sēdi, sess-;* — power, *potior*[4] (abl. or gen.).
possession; take — of, *occupo.*[1]
possessions, *rēs, rērum;* N. adj.
post, *statio, ōnis,* F.
posterity, *posteritas, tātis,* F.
poverty, *paupertās, egestās, tātis,* F.; *inopia, ae,* F.
power, *potestās, tātis,* F.; (ability), *potentia, ae,* F.; military —, *imperium, i,* N.; possess —, *potior rērum.*
powerful, *potēns, tis.*
powers, *vīrēs, vīrium,* F.
practice, *exercitātio, ōnis,* F.
prætor, *praetor, ōris,* M.
praise (v.), *laudo.*[1]
praise (n.), *laus, laudis,* F.
pray, *precor*[1] (*ab aliquō*); who — ? *quis tandem ?*
prayer, *precis, em, e* (no nom.), F.
precept, *praeceptum,* i, M.
prefer, *mālo* (*quam*); *antepōno,*[3] *-posui, -posit-* (dat.).
preferable, *potior, us* (*quam*).
prematurely, *praemātūrē.*
prepare, *paro,*[1] *praeparo.*[1]
prepared (well), *parātus, a, um.*
presage (v.), *praesāgio.*[4]
prescribe, *praescrībo,*[3] *psi, pt-.*
present (v.), *dōno*[1] (dat. and acc., or acc. and abl.); — one's self, *sē praebēre.*
present (adj.), *praesēns, -ntis;* be —, *adsum;* at —, *in praesentiā.*
presently, *mox.*
preserve, *cōnservo.*[1]
pretend, *simulo*[1]; *facio.*[3]
prevent, *impedio*[4] (with *quōminus* or *quīn*).
prey, *praeda, ae,* F.
price, *pretium, i,* N.
priest, *sacerdōs, ōtis,* C.
prison, *carcer, eris,* M.
prisoner, *captīvus, i,* M.
private, *prīvātus, domesticus, a, um.*
prize, *praemium, i,* N.
proceed, *prōcēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-; proficiscor,*[3] *fect-.*
process, *actio, ōnis,* F.
proclaim, *ēdīco,*[3] *xi, ct-.*
proconsul, *prōcōnsul, is,* M.
prodigy, *prōdigium, i,* N.
profit (v.), *prōsum* (dat.)
profit (n.), *stipis* (gen. F.).
profitable, *quaestuōsus, a, um.*
promise, *prōmitto,*[3] *mīsi, miss-; polliceor,*[2] *citus.*
pronounce (law), *dīco,*[3] *xi, ct-.*
proof, *argūmentum, i,* N.
proper; it is —, *decet.*
properly, *rectē.*
property, *bona, ōrum* (N. plur.).
proportion; in — to, *prō* (abl.); each in — as, use *quisque,* with superlative.
proposal (of laws), *lātio, ōnis.*
prosperous, *prosperus, a, um.*
protect, *tueor,*[2] *tuit-,* or *tūt-.*
protection, *praesidium, i,* N.; *fidēs, ei,* F.
proud, *superbus, a, um.*
prove, *probo.*[1]
provide, *prōvideo,*[2] *vīdi, vīs-* (dat. and acc.).
provided, *dum, modo, dummodo.*
providence, *prōvidentia, ae,* F.
province, *prōvincia, ae,* F.
prudent, *prūdēns, ntis.*
prudently, *prūdenter.*

Digitized by Google

public, *pūblicus, a, um;* the —, *vulgus, i,* N.
publican, *pūblicānus, i,* M.
punish, *pūnio,*[4] *castīgo*[1]*; supplicium sūmere dē* (abl.); *ulciscor,*[3] *ult-; animadverto,*[3] *verti, vers-* (*in* with accusative).
punishment, *poena, ae,* F. [M.
puppy, *catulus;* dim., *catellus, i,*
purchase (n.), *emptio, ōnis,* F.
purple (n.), *purpura, ae,* F.
purple (adj.), *purpureus, a, um.*
purse, *bursa, ae,* F. [*cūt-.*
pursue, *persequor, īnsequor,*[3] *se-*
pursuit, *studium, i,* N.; neut. adj.
push, *incito,*[1] *urgeo,*[2] *ursi;*—back, *repello,*[3] *puli, puls-.*
put on, *induo,*[3] *ui, ūtum* (on one's self, pass. with abl.); — to flight, *fugo*[1]*;* — to death, *interficio,*[3] *fēci, fect-;* — out (light), *exstinguo,*[3] *nxi, nct-.*

Q.

quæstor, *quaestor, ōris,* M.
quæstorship, *quaestūra, ae,* F.
quality (good), *bonum, i,* N.
quarrel, *rixa, ae,* F.
quarries, *lautumiae, ārum,* F.
queen, *rēgīna, ae,* F.
quench, *stinguo*[3] (*exstinguo*), *stinxi, stinct-.*
quick, *citus, rapidus, a, um.*
quickly, *cito, celeriter.*
quiet (v.); be —, *taceo,*[2] *ui, cit-.*
quiet (n), *quiēs, ētis,* F. [*lict-.*
quit, *linquo*[3] (*relinquo*), *līqui,*
quite, *prorsus, omnīnō.*

R.

rabbit, *cunīculus, i,* M.
rabble, *plēbs, plēbis,* F.; *sentīna, ae,* F.
race, *gēns, gentis,* F.
rage, *furor, ōris,* M.
raiment, *vestis, is,* F.
rain (v.), *pluere.*[3]
rain (n.), *pluvia, ae,* F.
raise, *tollo,*[3] *sustuli, sublāt-*
raised, be (shout), *exsisto,*[3] *stiti, stit-.*
rake, *rāstrum, i,* N.
rampart, *vallum, i,* N.
rank, *ordo, dinis,* M.; high —, *fastīgium, i,* N.; of —, *nōbilis, e.*
rapid, *rapidus, a, um.*
rarely, *rārō.*
rash, *temerārius, a, um; praeceps, cipitis.*
rashly, *temerē.*
rashness, *temeritās, tātis,* F.
rate; at any —, *certē;* at high — (of value), *mīgni.*
rather, *potius;* (with adj.), comparative; would —, *mālo.*
ravage, *vasto.*[1]
reach, *pervenio,*[4] *vēni, vent-* (*ad*)*; attingo,*[3] *tigi, tact-.*
read, *lego,*[3] *lēgi, lect-.*
reader, *lector, ōris,* M.
readily, *facile.*
ready, *parātus, a, um; facilis, e.*
reap, *meto,*[3] *messui, mess-.*
reason, *ratio, ōnis,* F.; (cause), *causa, ae,* F.; no —, *nihil est quod;* without special —, *temerē.*
rebellion, *tumultus, ūs,* M.
recall, *revoco.*[1]
recapture, *recupero.*[1]
receive, *accipio* (*recipio*),[3] *cēpi, cept-.*
reckon, *puto,*[1] *exīstimo.*[1]
reckoning, *ratio, ōnis,* F.
recline, *jaceo,*[2] *jacui.*
recognize, *cōgnōsco,*[3] *nōvi, nit-.*

Digitized by Google

recount, *commemoro.*[1]
recover, *recipio,*[3] *cēpi, cept-.*
red, *ruber, bra, brum.*
reduce, *redigo,*[3] *ēgi, act-.*
reference; to make —, *referre.*
refinement, *hūmānitās, tātis,* F.
reflect, *cōgito.*[1]
refuge, *perfugium, i,* N.; take —, *confugio,*[3] *fūgi* (*in* or *ad*).
refuse, *recūso,*[1] *nego,*[1] *abnuo,*[3] *nui, nuit-,* or *nūt-; remitto, mīsi, miss-.*
regard, *exīstimo,*[1] *dūco*[3]; in — to, *dē* (abl.).
region, *locus, i,* M.; pl., *loca,* N.
regret; I —, *mē paenitet* (gen. or infin.).
reign (v.), *rēgno*[1]; in the — of, express by ablative absolute.
reject, *rejicio* (*-icio*),[3] *jēci, ject-.*
rejoice, *lactor,*[1] *gaudeo,*[2] *gavis-.*
relate, *narro, memoro.*[1]
relieve, *levo.*[1]
religion, *religio, ōnis,* F.
relying, *frētus* (abl.).
remain (wait), *maneo,*[2] *nsi, ns-;* (be left), *rēsto,*[1] *stit-;* it remains, *rēstat, reliquum est.*
remarkable, *īnsīgnis, e; eximius.*
remedy, *remedium, i,* N.
remember, *memini;* (call to mind), *reminiscor*[3]; imperat., *memento.*
remind, *admoneo,*[2] *commonefacio.*[3]
remiss, *dissolūtus, a, um.*
remote, *remōtus, longinquus, a, um.*
remove, *āmoveo,*[2] *removeo,*[2] *mōvi, mōt-; migro*[1]; *discēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-; abeo* (irr.).
renowned, *clārus, inclitus, a, um.*
repair (roads), *mūnio.*[4]
repeal, *abrogo.*[1]
repel, *repello,*[3] *puli, puls-.*
repent, *paenitet* (acc. and gen.).
reply, *respondeo,*[2] *di, sum.*
report, *renūntio.*[1] [F.
republic, *rēspūblica, rēīpūblicae,*
reputation, *laus, laudis,* F.
request, *peto,*[3] *petīvi, petīt-* (*ab*).
require (*or* requiring), genitive with adjective.
reside, *īnsum* (*in* with abl.).
residence, *domicilium, i,* N.
resist, *resisto, obsisto,*[3] *stiti.*
resolution, *integritās, tātis,* F.
resolve, *statuo*[3] (*cōnstituo*), *statui, statūt-.*
respect, have (concern), *pertineo,*[2] *tinui-* (*ad*); (consider), *pāreo,*[2] *parui* (dat.).
respected, *spectātus, a, um.*
rest (of), *reliquus, a, um.*
rest (n.), *requiēs, ētis,* F.; **keep** from —, *inquiēto.*[1]
restore, *reddo,*[3] *didi, dit-.*
restrain, *cohibeo,*[2] *ui, itum; arceo,*[2] *cui, ct-* (*ab*).
retreat, *pedem refero.*
return (trans.), *reddo,*[3] *didi, dit-;* (intrans.), *redeo,*[4] *ii, it-; revertor,*[3] *vers-.*
reverence, *reverentia, ae,* F.
reward, *mercēs, ēdis,* F.; *pretium, praemium, i,* N.
Rhine, *Rhēnus, i,* M.
Rhodes, *Rhodus, i,* F.
Rhone, *Rhodanus, i,* M.
rhythmically, *numerōsē.*
rib, *costa, ae,* F.
rich, *dīves, itis* (*dītior, dītissimus*).
riches, *dīvitiae, ārum,* F.
ride, *equito,*[1] *vehor,*[3] *vect-.*
right, *jūs, jūris,* N.; — hand, *dextra* (*tera*), *ae,* F.; have a —, *licet* (dat. of person).

Digitized by Google

rightfully, *jūre.*
rightly, *rectē.*
ring, *ānulus* (*annulus*), *i*, M.
ripe, *mātūrus*, *a*, *um.*
river, *flūmen*, *inis*, N.; *amnis*, *is*, M.; — bank, *rīpa*, *ae*, F.
road, *via*, *ae*, F.
roar, *fremo*,[3] *ui.*
robber, *latro*, *ōnis*, M.
robe, *vestis*, *is*, F.
rod, *virga*, *ae*, F.
Roman, *Rōmānus*, *a*, *um.*
Rome, *Rōma*, *ae*, F.
roof, *tectum*, *i*, N.
root, *rādīx*, *īcis*, F.
rope, *fūnis*, *is*, M.
rose, *rosa*, *ae*, F.
rough, *asper*, *era*, *erum.*
rout (V.), *fundo*,[3] *fūdi*, *fūs-.*
rout (N.), *clādēs*, *is*, F.
route, *iter*, *itineris*, N.
royal, *rēgius*, *a*, *um*; — power, *rēgnum*, *i*, N.
royalty, *rēgnum*, *i*, N.
rub, *tero*,[3] *trīvi*, *trīt-.*
rude, *agrestis*, *e.*
rudely, *dūrē.*
ruin (V.), *afflīgo*,[3] *xi*, *ct-*; *perdo*,[3] [*didi*, *dit-.*
ruin (N.), *perniciēs*, *ēi*, F.
rule (V.), *rego*,[3] *xi*, *ct-* (ACC.); *impero*[1] (DAT.).
rule (N.), *imperium*, *i*, N.; — of conduct, *praeceptum*, *i*, N.
rumor, *rūmor*, *ōris*, M.; *fāma*, *ae*, F.
run, *curro*,[3] *cucurri*, *cursum.*
rust, *rōbīgo*, *inis*, F.
rustic, *rūsticus*, *a*, *um.*

S.

sacred, *sacer*, *cra*, *crum*; — grove, *lūcus*, *i*, M.; held —, *sanctus*, *a*, *um.*
sacrifices, *sacra*, *ōrum* (N. PL.).
sad, *tristis*, *e.*
sadden, *contristo.*[1]
safe, *tūtus*, *a*, *um.*
safety, *salūs*, *ūtis*, F.; in —, *tūtō.*
sagacious, *sagāx*, *ācis.*
sage, *sapiēns*, *ntis.*
sail (V.), *nāvigo.*[1]
sail (N.), *vēlum*, *i*, N.
sake; for the — of, *causā.*
Salamis, of, *Salamīnius*, *a*, *um.*
salt, *sāl*, *salis*, M.
salute, *salūto.*[1]
same, *īdem*, *eadem*, *idem*; at the — time, *simul.*
Samnite, *Samnīs*, *ītis.*
sapling, *surculus*, *i*, M.
satisfy, *satisfacio*[3] (DAT.).
savage, *immānis*, *e.*
save, *servo.*[1]
saw, *serra*, *ae*, F.
say, *dīco*,[3] *xi*, *ct-*; *loquor*,[3] *locūt-*; *āio*, *inquam*; — not, *nego.*[1]
scarcely, *vix.*
scare, *exterreo*,[2] *ui*, *it-.*
scheme, *inceptum*, *i*, N.
school, *schola*, *ae*, F.; *lūdus*, *i*, M.
schoolmaster, *lūdi magister*, *tri.*
Scipio, *Scīpio*, *ōnis.*
scoundrel, *mastīgia*, *ae*, M.
scout, *explōrātor*, *ōris*, M.
scream, *clāmo.*[1]
sea, *mare*, *is*, N.; from beyond —, *trānsmarīnus*, *a*, *um.*
seal, *signum*, *sigillum*, *i*, N.
sea-urchin, *echīnus*, *i*, M.
secretary, *scrība*, *ae*, M.
secretly, *clam* (ACC. or ABL.).
sedulously, *dīligenter.*
see, *video*,[2] *vīdi*, *vīs-*; — clearly, *cerno*,[3] *crēvi*, *crēt-.*
seed, *sēmen*, *inis*, N.

Digitized by Google

seek, *peto* (*repeto, adpeto*),[3] *tīvi, tīt-; quaero,*[3] *sīvi, sītum.*
seem, *or* — good, *videor,*[2] *vīsus.*
seize, *prehendo,*[3] *comprehendo,*[3] *di, sum;* — upon, *occupo.*[1]
self (emph.), *ipse;* (refl.), *sē, sui,* or personal pron.; — restraint, *continentia, ae,* F.; — seeking, *cupiditās, tātis,* F.
sell, *vēndo,*[3] *didi, dit-;* be sold, *vēneo,*[4] *ii, it-.*
senate, *senātus, ūs,* M.; (= senators), *patrēs, um,* M.; — house, *cūria, ae,* F.
senator, *senātor, ōris,* M.
senatorial, *senātōrius, a, um.*
send, *mitto,*[3] *mīsi, miss-;* — forward, *praemitto.*
Senones, *Senonēs, um.*
sense, *sēnsus, ūs,* M.; — of grief, *dolor, ōris,* M.; come to one's senses, *se colligere.*
separate (trans.), *sēcerno,*[3] *crēvi, crēt-;* (intrans.), *discēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-.*
separate (adj.), *sēparātus, a, um.*
separation, *dīgressus, ūs,* M.
September, *september, bris, bre.*
serious, *gravis, e;* *sevērus, a, um.*
seriously, *vehementer.*
seriousness, *gravitās, ātis;* *sevēritās, ātis,* F.
serpent, *serpēns, tis,* M.
servant, *servus, villicus, i,* M.
serve, *servio*[4] (dat.); (military), *stīpendia mereo.*[2]
service, *officium, i,* N.; military —, *rēs mīlitāris;* services, *beneficium, i,* N.; *officia,* N.
sesterce, *sēstertius, i,* M.
sestertium, *sēstertium, i,* N.
set, *pōno,*[3] *posui, posit-;* — out, *proficiscor,*[3] *fect-;* — on fire, *incendo,*[3] *ndi, ns-;* — sail, *solvo,*[3] *solvi, solūt-.*
several, *aliquot* (indeclin. adj.).
severe, *gravis, e;* *sevērus, a, um;* *tristis, e.*
severely, *ācriter, graviter.*
severity, *sevēritās, ātis,* F.
shade, shadow, *umbra, ae,* F.; shades, *mānēs, ium* (M. plur.).
shake, *concutio,*[3] *cussi, cuss-.*
shall, sign of fut. or imperat.
shame, *pudor, ōris,* M.
shameful, *turpis, e.*
shape, *forma, figūra, ae,* F.
share, *commūnico*[1] (*cum*).
sharer, *particeps, cipis,* C.
sharp, *acūtus, a, um.*
sheep, *ovis, is,* F.
shelter (v.), *tego,*[3] *xi, ct-.*
shelter (n.), *tectum, i;* *tegmen, inis,* N.
shepherd, *pastor, ōris,* M.
shield, *scūtum, i,* N.; *clipeus, i,* M.
shine, *lūceo,*[2] *xi;* — upon, *illūcēsco,*[3] *lūxi* (dat.).
shining, *fulgēns, tis;* *nitidus, a, um.*
ship, *nāvis, is,* F.; belonging to —, *nāvālis, e.*
shoe, *calceus, i,* M.
short, *brevis, e;* very —, *perbrevis, e;* in —, *dēnique.*
shortness, *brevitās, tātis,* F.
should, sign of mood or tense.
shoulder, *humerus, i,* M.
shout (v.), *clāmo,*[1] *exclāmo.*
shout (n.), *clāmor, ōris,* M.
shouting, *clāmitātio, ōnis,* F.
show (v.), *ostendo,*[3] *ndi, nt-* and *ns-;* — off, *exhibeo*[2]*;* it shows wisdom, *sapientis est.*
show (n.), *speciēs, ēi,* F.
shower, *imber, bris,* M.
showily, *apparātē.*

Digitized by Google

shrewd, *callidus, a, um; sollers,*
shrine, *fānum, i,* N. [*tis.*
shrink from, *recūso.*[1]
shun, *vīto, ēvīto.*[1]
shut, *claudo,*[3] *si, sum.*
Sicilian, *Siculus, a, um.*
Sicily, *Sicilia, ae,* F.
sick, *aegrōtus, a, um.*
sickly, *morbidus, a, um.*
sickness, *morbus, i,* M.
Sicyonian, *Sicyōnius, a, um.*
side, *latus, eris,* N.; *pars, partis,* F.; on both sides, *utrimque;* on all sides, *undique.*
Sidon, *Sīdon, ōnis* (acc. *a*).
Sidonian, *Sīdonius, a, um.*
siege, *obsidio, ōnis,* F.; (attack), *oppūgnātio, ōnis,* F.; lay — to, *oppūgno.*[1]
sight, *cōnspectus, ūs,* M.; catch — of, *cōnspicor.*[1]
sign, signal, *sīgnum, i,* N.
silence, *silentium, i,* N.
silent, be, *taceo,*[2] *cui, cit-.*
silly, *stultus, a, um.*
silver, *argentum, i,* N.
simple, *simplex, icis.*
simply, *simpliciter.*
since, *cum* (with subj.), *quoniam;* abl. abs.; (adv.), *posteā.*
sinew, *nervus, i,* M.
sinewy, *nervōsus, a, um.*
sing, *cano,*[3] *cecini, cantum.*
sister, *soror, ōris,* F.
sit, *sedeo*[2] (*resideo*), *sēdi, sess-;* *assīdo,*[3] *sēd-.*
size, *māgnitūdo, inis,* F.
skilfully, *scienter, prūdenter.*
skill, *scientia, ae; ars, artis,* F.
skilled, *perītus, a, um* (gen.).
skin, *pellis, is,* F.
skulk (v.), *lateo.*[2]
sky, *caelum, i,* N.; (pl. *caeli,* M.).
slaughter (v.), *trucīdo.*[1]
slaughter (n.), *caedēs, is,* F.; *clādēs, is; internecio, ōnis,* F.
slave, *servus, i;* (female), *serva, ae;* of a —, *servīlis, e;* be —, *servio*[4] (dat.).
slay, *interficio,*[3] *fēci, fectum.*
sleep (v.), *dormio.*[4]
sleep (n.), *somnus, i,* M.; go to —, *condormio.*[4]
slender, *tenuis, e; exiguus, a, um.*
sling, *funda, ae,* F.
slipper, *calceus, i,* M.
slow, *tardus, a, um.*
sluggard, *īgnāvus, i,* M. (adj.).
small, *parvus, a, um* (*minor, minimus*); *exiguus, a, um.*
smoke, *fūmus, i,* N.
smooth, *lēvis, e.*
snail, *cochlea, ae,* F.
snake, *anguis, is; serpēns, tis,* M.
snatch (up), *rapio,*[3] *rapui, rapt-;* — away, *ēripio,*[3] *rept-* (dat.).
snow, *nix, nivis,* F.
snowy, *nivōsus, a, um.*
so, *ita, sīc;* — great, *tantus;* — many, *tot;* —...as, *tam...quam;* — long, *tamdiū;* — highly (of value), *tanti.*
sober, *sobrius, a, um.*
society, *societās, ātis,* F.
soft, *mollis, e.*
softness, *mollitia, ae,* F.
solace, *sōlātium, i,* N. (*-cium*).
soldier, *mīles, itis,* M.; belonging to —, *mīlitāris, e.*
soldiership, *rēs mīlitāris.*
solid, *solidus, a, um.*
solitude, *sōlitūdo, dinis,* F.
some, *aliquis, quīdam;* (correl.), *alius;* — or other, *nescio quis.*
some time, *aliquando;* (in duration), *aliquamdiū.*

Digitized by Google

somewhat, *aliquid, quicquam ;* (w. comparatives), *aliquantō ;* (in like manner), *similiter* (*atque* or *āc*).
son, *fīlius, i ;* voc., *fīlī ; nātus, i.*
song, *cantus, ūs,* M. ; (the words), *carmen, inis,* N.
soon, *brevi, mox ;* as — as, *simul atque.*
sorrow, *dolor, ōris, lūctus, ūs,* M.
sorrowing, *maestus, a, um.*
sorry ; to be —, *doleo,*[2] *ui ;* I am —, *me paenitet ; aegrē fero* (with *quod,* or acc. and infin.).
sort, *genus, eris,* N. ; of what —, *quālis, e ;* of this —, *ējusmodi.*
soul, *animus, i,* M.
sound (v.), *sono,*[1] *sonui, sonit-.*
sound (n.), in general, *sonus, i,* M. ; — of voice, *vōx, vōcis,* F. ; — of arms, &c., *sonitus, ūs,* M.
sour, *acidus, acerbus, a, um.*
south-east wind, *Eurus, i,* M.
south wind, *Auster, tri,* M.
sow, *sēmentem* (*sēmentis, is*) *facere.*
Spain, *Hispānia, ae,* F.
spare, *parco,*[3] *peperci, parcitum.*
sparrow, *passer, eris,* M.
speak, *loquor,*[3] *locūtus* (*ad* or *cum*) *; dīco,*[3] *dīxi, dīct-.*
spear, *hasta, ae,* F.
speech, *contio* (*ōrātio*), *ōnis,* F. ; *sermo, ōnis,* M.
speed, *celeritās, ātis,* F.
speedily, *cito.*
spend (time), *mōlior.*[4]
spirit, *animus, i,* M. ; — of confidence, *fīdūcia, ae,* F. ; in high —, *lūdibundus, a, um.*
spirited, *fortis, e.*
splendid, *ornātus, a, um.*
splendor, *māgnificentia, ae,* F.
spoil (n.), *praeda, ae,* F.
sport, *lūdo,*[3] *lūsi, lūs-.*
spot, *locus, i,* M. ; pl. *loca.* [*um.*
spread (adj.), *dissēminātus, a,*
spring (v.), *salio,*[4] *salui, saltum.*
spring (n.), *vēr, vēris,* N.
sprung, *ortus* (part. of *orior*), *oriundus* (*ab*).
spur, *calcar, āris,* N.
spurn, *sperno,*[3] *sprēvi, sprēt-.*
staff, *virga, ae,* F.
stag, *cervus, i,* M.
stand, *sto,*[1] *steti, stat- ;* (matter), *sē habēre*[2] *;* — aside, *abesse* (*ab*).
standard, *sīgnum, i,* N.
star, *stella, ae,* F.
state, *cīvitās, tātis,* F. ; by the —, *pūblicē ;* — of things, neut. adj.
statue, *sīgnum, i,* N.
stature, *statūra, ae,* F.
stay, *maneo* (*remaneo*),[2] *nsi, ns-.*
steal, *fūror.*[1]
step, *gradus, ūs,* M.
sternness, *sevēritās, tātis,* F.
stew-pan, *patina, ae,* F.
stiff, *rigidus, a, um.* [*um.*
still (adj.), *placidus, quiētus, a,*
still (adv.), *adhūc.*
stimulate, *commoveo,*[2] *mōvi, mōt-.*
stir up, *concito*[1] *; cieo,*[2] *cīvi, citum.*
stock, *stirps, stirpis,* F.
Stoic, *Stōicus, i,* M.
stone, *lapis, idis,* M.
stool, *scamnus, i,* M.
storm, *hiems* (*hiemps*), *is,* F. ; *tempestās, ātis.*
story, *fābula, ae,* F.
stout (thick-set), *crassus, a, um.*
straightway, *prōtinus.*
strait, *fretum, i,* N.
straits, *angustiae, ārum* (F. pl.).
strange, *mīrus, a, um ;* **stranger,**
stream, *flūmen, inis,* N. [*advena.*

Digitized by Google

strength, *vīrēs, ium* (F. pl.); (defence), *praesidium, i,* N.
strike, *ferio,*[4] *percutio,*[3] *cussi, cuss-; verbero*[1]; — (terror), *īnferre* (dat.); — (thunderbolt), *excutio,*[3] *cussi, cuss-;* — off, *dēcutio.*
strip, *spolio*[1] (abl.).
strive (to do a thing), *nītor* (*ēnītor*), *nīsus;* (contend), *certo*[1]; *contendo,*[3] *di, tum.*
strong, *validus, a, um; valēns, tis.*
strongly, *vehementer, valdē.*
study, *studeo,*[2] *dui.*
style, *stilus, i,* M.; in fine —, *bellissimē.*
subdivision, *partītio, ōnis,* F.
subdue, *subigo,*[3] *ēgi, act-; pāco.*[1]
subject, *rēs, rei,* F.
subtlety, *sollertia, ae,* F.
suburbs; in the —, *suburbānus, a, um.*
succeed, *succēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-* (dat.).
successfully, *prosperē.*
successive, *continuus, a, um.*
such, *tālis, e;* (= so great), *tantus, a, um.*
sudden, *subitus, a, um.*
suddenly, *subitō.*
suffer, *patior,*[3] *pass-;* (intrans.), *labōro*[1]; — punishment, *dare poenās.*
suffice, *sufficio,*[3] *fēci, fect-.*
sufficient, *satis.*
suit (of clothes), *habitus, ūs,* M.
suitable, *idōneus, a, um.*
suited, *aptus, a, um* (dat., or *ad* with acc.).
sullen, *mōrōsus, a, um.*
sum of money, *pecūnia, ae,* F.
summer, *aestās, ātis,* F.; (adj.), *aestīvus, a, um.*
summon, *arcesso,*[3] *sīvi, sīt-.*
sun, *sōl, sōlis,* M.
sunset, *sōlis occāsus, ūs,* M.
superfluous, *supervacuus, a, um.*
superior, *praestantior, us.*
superstitious, *superstitiōsus, a, um.*
supper, *cēna, ae,* F.
suppliant, *supplex, plicis,* C.
support, *sustineo,*[2] *tinui, tent-.*
suppose, *arbitror,*[1] *jūdico,*[1] *puto*[1] (or subjunctive).
suppress, *comprimo,*[3] *compressi, press-.*
sure, *certus, a, um;* I am —, *crēdo*[3], *certō scio*[4]; be —, *fac;* be — not, *cavē* (with subj.).
surely, *profectō.*
surety, *spōnsor, ōris,* M.
surname, *cōgnōmen, minis,* N.
surpass, *supero.*[1]
surrender, *sē dēdere.*
suspect, *suspicor.*[1]
suspected, *suspectus, a, um.*
suspicion, *suspītio* (*cio*), *ōnis,* F.
suspicious, *suspītiōsus, a, um.*
sustain, *sustento*[1]; *sustineo,*[2] *ui, tentum.*
sustenance, *victus, ūs,* M.
swamp, *palūs, ūdis,* F.
swan, *cygnus, i,* M.
swear, *jūro.*[1]
sweet, *dulcis, suāvis, e.*
sweetness, *suāvitās, ātis,* F.
swift, *vēlōx, ōcis; celer, eris, ere; rapidus, a, um.*
swiftly, *cito.*
swiftness, *celeritās, tātis,* F.
swim, *nato.*[1]
swine, *sūs, suis,* C.
sword, *gladius, i,* M.; *ferrum, i,* N.
Syracuse, *Syrācūsae, ārum,* F.

Digitized by Google

T.

table, *mēnsa, ae,* F.
tail, *cauda, ae,* F.
take, *capio,*[3] *cēpi, capt-; sūmo,*[3] *mpsi, mpt-;* — away *or* from, *aufero; adimo*[3] (dat.); — care of, *cūro*[1]; — counsel against, *cōnsulere* (*in* with acc.); — journey, *iter facere;* — part, *interesse* (dat.); — place, *fīo;* — pleasure, *libet;* — refuge, *cōnfugere* (*in* with acc.); — upon, *sūmo* (dat.); — upon one's self, *suscipere.*
talent, *talentum, i,* N.
talk (v.), *loquor,*[3] *locūt-.*
talk (n.), *vōx, vōcis,* F.
tall, *ēminēns, ntis; prōcērus, a, um.*
Tarquin, *Tarquinius, i.*
tarry, *cōnsisto,*[3] *stiti, stit-; moror.*[1]
task, *opus, eris,* N.
taste; have — of, *sapio,*[3] *īvi.*
teach, *doceo,*[2] *ui, doctum.*
tear, *lacrima, ae,* F.
tear away, *dēripio,*[3] *ripui, rept-.*
tell, *nūntio*[1]; *dīco,*[3] *xi, ctum;* — a lie, *mentior*[4]; — me, *cēdo.*
temper, *animus, i,* M.
tempest, *tempestās, ātis,* F.
temple, *templum, i,* N.
tempt, *sollicito.*[1]
tend, *cūro.*[1]
tender, *tener, era, erum.*
tent, *tabernāculum, i,* N.
terrified, *perterritus, a, um.*
terrify, *terreo,*[2] *ui, itum.*
territory, *ager, agri,* M.; *fīnēs, ium* (M. plur.).
terror, *terror, ōris; metus, ūs,* M.; be in —, *trepido*[1]; there is —, *trepidātur.*
test, *experior,*[4] *pert-.*
testify, *testificor.*[1]
than, *quam* (or ablative after comparative), *atque āc.*
thanks; give or return —, *grātiās agere.*
that (demonstr.), *is, ille, iste;* (relat.), *quī, quae, quod.*
that (conj.), *ut, quō, quīn, quod;* (purpose), *ut* (subj.); — **not,** *quīn, quōminus.*
theatre, *theātrum, i,* N.
Theban, *Thēbānus, a, um.*
theft, *furtum, i,* N.
Themistocles, *Themistoclēs, is.*
themselves, see **self.**
then (at that time), *tum;* (thereupon), *deinde.*
thence, *inde.*
Theophanes, *Theophanēs, is.*
there, *ibi;* — is, *est;* is —? *estne?*
therefore, *itaque, ergō, igitur.*
thick, *crassus* (*dēnsus*), *a, um.*
thief, *fūr, fūris,* M.
thin, *tenuis, e; gracilis, e.*
thing, *rēs, rei,* F.; (neut. adj.); good things, *bona,* N.
think, *puto*[1]; (suppose), *opīnor*[1]; (by reasoning), *exīstimo, arbitror*[1]; (a judgment), *cēnseo,*[2] *nsui, ns-;* (opinion), *sentio,*[4] *nsi, ns-;* (exercise the mind), *cōgito*[1]; I — best, *mihi placet.*
thinness, *tenuitās, ātis,* F.
thirst, *sitis, is, im, i,* F.
this, *hic;* (a thing to be mentioned), *ille;* — is, *ecce.*
thither, *eō, illūc.*
thoroughly, *accūrātē.*
those, *illi, ae, a* (see **that**).
threaten, *minor*[1] (acc. of thing, and dat. of person).
threatening, *mināx, ācis.*
three days, *trīduum, i,* N.

Digitized by Google

thrice, *ter.*
throat, *guttur, uris,* N.
throne, *solium, i,* N.
throng (v.), *concurro,*[3] *curri, curs-; concursum facere.*
through, *per* (acc.); abl. (cause).
throughout, express by *tōtus.*
thunder, *tonitrus, ūs,* M. (*trū,* N.).
thunderbolt, *fulmen, inis,* N.
thus, *ita, sīc.*
thwart, *obsto,*[1] *stiti, stāt-* (dat.).
Tiber, *Tiberis, is* (acc., *im*), M.
tidings, neut. plur. of adj.
tie, *necto,*[3] *xui, xum.*
tiger, *tigris, idis,* C.
till, *dōnec.*
time, *tempus, ōris,* N.; *tempestās, tātis,* F.; in good —, *opportūnē;* at that —, *tum;* at the same —, *simul; īdem,* agreeing with name of person; some —, *aliquando;* for some —, *aliquamdiū.*
timid, *timidus, a, um.*
timorous, *pavidus, a, um.*
tired, *fessus* (*lassus*), *a, um;* I am —, *mē taedet.*
Tiro, *Tīro, ōnis.*
to, of motion, *ad* (acc.); of relation, dat.; before a verb, infin.; — be sure, *scīlicet.*
to-day, *hodiē;* (adj.), *hodiernus.*
tomb, *sepulcrum, i,* N.
together, *cōram, ūnā.*
to-morrow, *crās;* (adj.), *crāstinus, a, um.*
tongue, *lingua, ae,* F.
too (also), *et, quoque;* — much, *nimius, a, um;* compar. of adj.; *nimis, nimium.*
tooth, *dēns, dentis,* M.
top (of), *summus, a, um.*
topic, *locus, i,* M.; plur., *loci.*
torture; examination with —, *quaestio, ōnis,* F.
tossing, *agitātio, ōnis,* F.
touch, *tango,*[3] *tetigi, tact-;* — upon, *attingo,*[3] *tigi, tact-.*
towards, *ergā* (acc.).
town, *oppidum, i,* N.
townsman, *oppidānus, i,* M.
tragic, *tragicus, a, um.*
train, *exerceo.*[2]
traitor, *prōditor, ōris,* M.
Tranio, *Trānio, ōnis.*
transfer, *trānsfero.*
treachery, *prōditio, ōnis,* F.; *perfidia, ae,* F.
treason, *prōditio, ōnis,* F.
treaty, *foedus, eris,* N.
tree, *arbor, oris,* F.
tremble, *tremo,*[3] *mui.*
trial, *jūdicium, i,* N.; make a —, *experior,*[4] *pert-.*
tribe, *tribus, ūs* (*ubus*), F.
tribune, *tribūnus, i,* M.; of the —, *tribūnīcius, a, um.*
trick, trickery, *dolus, i,* M.
trifling, *modicus, a, um.*
tripe, *vulva, ae,* F. (a similar dish).
troops, *cōpiae, ārum.*
trophy, *tropaeum, i,* N.
trouble (v.), *moveo* (*commoveo*),[2] *mōvi, mōt-.*
trouble (n.), *opera, ae,* F.; *labor, ōris,* M.
troublesome, *importūnus, a, um.*
Troy, *Trōja, ae,* F.
true, *vērus, a, um.*
truly, *rectē, vērē, vērō.*
trust, *crēdo,*[3] *didi, dit-* (dat.); *cōnfīdo,*[3] *fīsus* (dat. or abl.).
trusted, *probātus, a, um* (dat.).
truth, *vēritās, tātis,* F.; in —, *vērō;* with —, *vērē.*
try, *cōnor*[1]*; experior,*[4] *expertus.*

Digitized by Google

tuft of wool, *floccus, i,* M.
turn, *verto,*[3] *ti, sum;* — out (intrans.), *ēvādo,*[3] *vāsi, vās-.*
Tusculanum, *Tusculānum, i,* N.
tusk, *dēns, dentis,* M.
twin, *geminus, a, um.*
type, *norma, ae,* F.
tyrant, *tyrannus, i,* M.

U.

ugly, *turpis, dēformis, e.*
Ulysses, *Ulixēs, is* or *i.*
unawares, *imprōvīsō.*
uncertain, *incertus, a, um.*
under, *sub* (acc. or abl.).
undergo, *subeo,*[4] *ii, it-* (acc.).
understand, *intellego* (*intelligo*),[3] *lexi, lect-;* be understood (of words), *dēsum.*
undertake, *suscipio* (*recipio*),[3] *cēpi, ceptum.*
uneasy, *sollicitus, a, um.*
unfriendly, *inimīcus, a, um.*
unhappy, *īnfēlix, īcis; miser, era, erum.*
unharmed, *incolumis, e;* — condition, *incolumitās, tātis,* F.
union, *societās, tātis,* F.
unite, *jungo* (*conjungo*),[3] *nxi, nct-.*
unjust, *injūstus, a, um,*
unless, *nisi.*
until (conj.), *dum, dōnec.*
until (prep.), *usque ad.*
untimely, *immātūrus, a, um.*
unwilling, *invītus, a, um.*
unworthily, *indignē.*
unworthy, *indignus, a, um* (abl.).
up, *sursum.*
up and down, *profectō.*
upon, *in* (acc. or abl.).
uproar, *strepitus, ūs,* M.
urge, *sollicito.*[1]
use (v.), *and* make — of, *ūtor,*[3] *ūsus* (abl.); (be accustomed), *solco,*[2] *solitus.*
use (n.), *ūtilitās, ātis; facultās, tātis,* F.
used-to, imperfect tense.
usury, *ūsūra, ae,* F.

V.

vain; in —, *frustrā.*
valiant, *strenuus; fortis, e.*
valley, *vallis, is,* F.
valor, *virtūs, ūtis,* F.
value, *aestimo*[1]*; facio,*[3] *fēci, fact-.*
various, *varius, a, um.*
Varro, *Varro, ōnis.*
vast, *ingēns, tis.*
verdict, *sententia, ae,* F.
Vergobret, *Vergobretus, i,* M.
very, expr. by superl. or *per-;* (adj.), *ipse;* — few, *perpauci;* — highly, *plūrimi;* — much, *valdē;* — short, *perbrevis, e;* — unwilling, *perinvītus, a, um.*
Vespasian, *Vespasiānus, i,* M.
veteran, *veterānus, i,* M.
vexed, be, *molestē ferre.*
vice, *vitium, i,* N.
victor, victorious, *victor, victrīx.*
victory, *victōria, ae,* F.
vigor, *viriditās, tātis,* F.
villa, *villa, ae,* F.
villanous, *and* **villain,** *scelestus, a, um.*
vine, *vītis, is,* F.
viol, *fidicula, ae,* F.
violent, *violēns, ingēns, entis; vehemēns, ntis.*
virgin, *virgo, inis,* F.
virtue, *virtūs, tūtis,* F.
visit, *vīso,*[3] *vīsi, vīs-.*
voice, *vōx, vōcis,* F.

Digitized by Google

Volscian, *Volscus* (*Vulscus*), *i.*
voluntary, *voluntārius, a, um.*

W.

wait; — for, *exspecto.*[1]
wake, *vigilo.*[1]
walk, *ambulo.*[1]
wall, *mūrus, i,* M.; (of a house), *pariēs, ietis,* M.
want, *egeo* (*indigeo*),[2] *gui* (gen. and abl.); *volo;* — of confidence, *diffidentia, ae,* F.
wanting, be, *dēsum* (dat.).
wanton; to be —, *lūdo,*[3] *lascīvio.*[4]
war, *bellum, i,* N.; (service), *mīlitia, ae,* F.
warlike, *bellicōsus, a, um.*
warm, *tepidus, a, um.*
warn, *moneo* (*admoneo*),[2] *ui, itum.*
wash, *abluo,*[3] *lui, lūt-;* *lāvo.*[1]
watch, *vigilo.*[1]
watchful, *dīligēns, ntis.*
watching (adj.), *vigilāns, tis.*
watching (n.), *vigilia, ae,* F.
water, *aqua, ae,* F.
wave, *flūctus, ūs,* M.
way, *via, ae,* F.; give —, *cēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-;* be on — from, *dēcēdo.*
we, *nōs* (exp. only for emphasis).
wealth, *dīvitiae, ārum,* F.
wealthy, *opulentus, a, um.*
weary, *fessus, a, um.*
weather, *tempestās, tātis,* F.
weep, *fleo,*[2] *flēvi, flētum.*
weigh, *pendo,*[3] *pependi, pēns-.*
weight, *pondus, eris,* N.
welfare (common), *rēs, rei* (*pūblica*).
well (adv.), *bene, probē.*
well (interj.), *ēn, euge;* — now, *eho;* be —, *valeo*[2]*;* be — for, *expedio*[4] (dat.); — fitted, *aptus, a, um.*
wet, be, *madeo,*[2] *madui.*
what, *quod, id quod;* (interr.), *quid? quis? quisnam?*
whatever, *quicquid* (*quidquid*).
wheat, *trīticum, i,* N.
wheel, *rota, ae,* F.
when, *cum, quando, ut, ubi,* etc.; abl. abs.; noun in apposition.
where, *ubi.*
wherefore, *quam ob rem.*
wherever, *ubicunque.*
whether, *an, num;* — ... or, *utrum ... an.*
which? *quis?* to —, *quō;* — of the two, *uter, tra, trum.*
while, *cum;* *dum* (pres. indic.).
whirl, *torqueo,*[2] *torsi, tortum.*
whisper, *susurro.*[1]
white, *albus, candidus, a, um.*
whither, *quō.*
whithersoever, *quōcumque.*
who, which, *quī, quae, quod.*
who? what? *quis, quae, quid?*
whole, *tōtus, a, um.*
wholly, *tōtus* (adj.), *omnīnō.*
why, *cūr, quīn, quāpropter;* — not? *quidnū?*
wicked, *improbus, a, um.*
widely, *lātē.*
wife, *uxor, ōris,* F.
wild, *ferus, a, um; agrestis, e.*
will (v.), *volo, velle, volui* (or future).
will (n.), *voluntās, ātis,* F.
willingly, *libenter.*
wily, *subdolus, a, um.*
win, *adipiscor,*[3] *dept-;* *expeto,*[3] *īvi, īt-.*
wind, *ventus, i,* M.
window, *fenestra, ae,* F.
wine, *vīnum, i,* N

Digitized by Google

wing, *āla, ae,* F.; — of army, *cornū,* N.
winter, *hiems* (*hiemps*), *is,* F.; (adj.), *hībernus, a, um;* — quarters, *hiberna, ōrum* (N. pl.).
wisdom, *sapientia, ae,* F.
wise, *sapiēns, prūdēns, ntis.*
wish, *volo, velle, volui; cupio.*[3]
wit, *facētiae, argūtiae, ārum* (F. plur.).
with, *cum* (abl.); (in presence of), *apud* (acc.); be —, *adsum* (dat.); instrum., express by ablative.
withdraw (trans.), *dēdūco,*[3] *xi, ct-; exhaurio,*[4] *hausi, haust-;* (intr.), *cēdo,*[3] *cessi, cess-* (abl.).
withhold, *abstineo,*[2] *tinui, tent-.*
within, *intrā* (acc.); abl. of time.
without, *sine* (abl.); (destitute of), *carēns, ntis* (abl.).
withstand, *sustineo,*[2] *tinui, tent-.*
witness, *testis, is,* C.; — in court, *jūrātus, i,* M.
witty, *facētus, a, um.*
wolf, *lupus, i,* M.; *lupa, ae,* F.
woman, *mulier, eris,* F.
wonder at, *mīror.*[1]
wonderful, *mīrābilis, e.*
wont, to be, *soleo,*[2] *solitus.*
wood, *lignum, i,* N.; (forest), *silva, ae,* F.
wooden, *līgneus, a, um.*
wool, *lāna, ae,* F.; tuft of —, *floccus, i,* M.
word, *verbum, i,* N.; — by —, *ad verbum;* bring —, *nūntio, renūntio.*[1]
work, *opus, eris,* N.
world, *mundus, i,* M.; *orbis terrārum,* M.
worm, *vermis, is,* M.
worn out, be, *marceo,*[2] *dēfatīgor.*[1]
worry, *vexo.*[1]
worse, *pējor, us.*
worship, *adōro*[1]*; colo,*[3] *ui, cultum.*
worth, be, *sto,*[1] *steti, stat-;* — while, *operae pretium.*
worthy, *dignus, a, um* (abl., or clause with *quī*).
would, *utinam* (subj.); (auxil.), subj.; — rather, *mālo.*
wound (v.), *vulnero.*[1]
wound (n.), *vulnus, eris,* N.
wounded, *vulnerātus, a, um.*
wrath, *īra, ae; īrācundia, ae,* F.
wreath, *corōna, ae,* F.; *sertum, i,* N.
wretch, *miser, i,* M.; that —, *iste, a, ud.*
wretched, *miser, era, erum.*
wretchedly, *miserē.*
wretchedness, *miseria, ae,* F.
write, *scrībo,*[3] *psi, ptum;* — out, *dēscrībo, perscrībo.*
writers, use adjective.
writing, *scrīptum, i.*
wrong; to do —, *pecco*[1]*;* — is done, *peccātur* (impers.).
wrong (n.), *injūria, ae,* F.; to do a —, *injūriam īnferre.*

X.

Xerxes, *Xerxēs, is.*

Y.

year, *annus, i,* M.; year's (adj.), *annuus, a, um.*
yes, to be sure, *etiam;* — indeed, *immo.*
yesterday, *herī;* (adj.), *hester-nus.*
yet, *tamen;* not —, *nōndum.*
yield, *cēdo,*[3] *cessi, cessum.*
yoke, *jugum, i,* N.

Digitized by Google

you, *tū, vōs.*
young, *adulescēns, ntis;* — man, *adulescēns, juvenis, is.*
your, *tuus, a, um; vester, tra, trum; iste.*
youth, *adulescēns, ntis,* C.; *juvenis, is,* M.; abstract, or body of —, *juventūs, tūtis,* F.; *adulescentia, ae,* F.

Z.

zeal, *studium, i,* N.
zealous, *studiōsus, a, um.*
zealously, *studiōsē.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR.

The first edition was published in 1872, and was widely adopted, reaching a sale of *over 30,000 copies*. In 1877, the editors completed a revision, which has made it *virtually a new work* while *retaining all the important features of the old*. Attention is invited to the following merits of the book:

1. *The Supplementary and Marginal Notes on Etymology, Comparative Philology, and the meaning of forms.* In this department it is believed to be more full and complete than any other school text-book, and to embody the most advanced views of comparative philologists.

2. *Numerous Introductory Notes in the Syntax, giving a brief view of the theory of constructions.* These Notes are original contributions to the discussion of the topics of which they treat; they illustrate and greatly simplify syntactical construction, and are not based upon *abstract theory*, or "metaphysics of the subjunctive," but upon *linguistic science*, or upon the actual historical development of language from its simplest forms.

3. *Treatment of Special Topics of Syntax.* On these points we invite comparison with other school grammars on the score of simplicity and clearness.

4. *The extended, and often complete, lists of forms and constructions.*

5. *Tabulated examples of peculiar or idiomatic use.*

6. *The full and clear treatment of Rhythm and Versification*, corresponding with the latest and best authorities on the subject.

7. *The unusual brevity attained without sacrifice of completeness or clearness.*

This Grammar expresses *the results of independent study of the best original sources*. It has been *strictly subordinated to the uses of the class-room* through the advice and aid of several of our most experienced teachers. The rapid adoption of this Grammar in *over three-fourths of the leading colleges and preparatory schools of the country* is believed to be a full guaranty for its adaptation to the purposes of instruction.

ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S LATIN COURSE.

New Latin Method (to be used independent of the Grammar).

Leighton's Latin Lessons (designed to accompany the Grammar).

Six Weeks' Preparation for Reading Cæsar (designed to accompany the Grammar, and also to prepare pupils for reading at sight).

Allen & Greenough's Cæsar,* Cicero,* Virgil,* Ovid,* Sallust, Cato Major, Latin Composition, Preparatory Latin Course, No. II. (with Vocabulary), containing four books of Cæsar's Gallic War, and eight Orations of Cicero.

Keep's Parallel Rules of Greek and Latin Syntax.

Allen's Latin Reader. Selections from Cæsar, Curtius, Nepos, Sallust, Ovid, Virgil, Plautus, Terence, Cicero, Pliny, and Tacitus. With Vocabulary.

Crowell & Richardson's Brief History of Roman Literature.

Crowell's Selections from the Less Known Latin Poets.

Stickney's De Natura Deorum.

Allen's (F. D.) Remnants of Early Latin.

Leighton's Critical History of Cicero's Letters.

Leighton's Elementary Treatise on Latin Orthography.

White's Junior Student's Latin-English Lexicons.

* With or without Vocabulary.

A Full Descriptive Catalogue mailed on Application.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

Digitized by Google

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

Goodwin's Greek Grammar. Revised and Enlarged Edition for 1879.

It states general principles clearly and distinctly, with special regard to those who are preparing for college.

It excludes all detail which belongs to a book of reference, and admits whatever will aid a pupil in mastering the great principles of Greek Grammar.

The sections on the Syntax of the Verb are generally condensed from the author's larger work on the Greek Moods and Tenses. (See below.)

It contains a brief statement of the author's new classification of conditional sentences, with its application to relative and temporal sentences, which appears now for the first time in an elementary form.

It contains a catalogue of irregular verbs, constructed entirely with reference to the wants of beginners.

All forms are excluded (with a few exceptions) which are not found in the strictly classic *Greek before Aristotle.*

White's First Lessons in Greek. Prepared to accompany Goodwin's Greek Grammar.

A series of Greek-English and English-Greek Exercises, *taken mainly from the first four books of Xenophon's Anabasis*, with Additional Exercises on Forms, and complete Vocabularies. The Lessons are carefully graded, and do not follow the order of arrangement of the Grammar, but begin the study of the verb with the second Lesson, and then pursue it alternately with that of the remaining parts of speech. *It contains enough Greek Prose Composition for entrance into any college.*

Leighton's Greek Lessons. Prepared to accompany Goodwin's Greek Grammar.

A progressive series of exercises (both Greek and English), mainly selected from the first book of Xenophon's Anabasis. The exercises on the Moods are sufficient, it is believed, to develop the general principles as stated in the Grammar.

Goodwin & White's First Four Books of the Anabasis.

Goodwin's Greek Reader contains the first and second books of the Anabasis. Also, selections from Plato, Herodotus, and Thucydides; being the full amount of Greek Prose required for admission at Harvard University.

Goodwin's Selections from Xenophon and Herodotus contains the first four books of the Anabasis, the greater part of the second book of the Hellenica of Xenophon, and extracts from the sixth, seventh, and eighth books of Herodotus.

Anderson's First Three Books of Homer's Iliad.

Goodwin's Greek Moods and Tenses. Gives a plain statement of the principles which govern the construction of the Greek Moods and Tenses,—the most important and the most difficult part of Greek Syntax.

F. D. Allen's Prometheus of Æschylus.
Tarbell's Orations of Demosthenes.
Flagg's Public Harangues of Demosthenes.
Tyler's Selections from the Greek Lyric Poets.
Seymour's Selections from Pindar and the Bucolic Poets.
Whiton's Select Orations of Lysias.
White's Œdipus Tyrannus of Sophocles.
F. D. Allen's Medea of Euripides.
Sidgwick's Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.
White's Schmidt's Rhythmic and Metric of the Classical Languages.
Liddell & Scott's Greek-English Lexicons. Abridged and Unabridged.

A Full Descriptive Catalogue mailed on application.

GINN & HEATH, Publishers, Boston, New York, and Chicago.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google